

THE  
AMERICAN  
GRAMMAR:  
OR, A  
COMPLETE  
INTRODUCTION  
TO THE  
ENGLISH AND LATIN  
LANGUAGES.

FORMED

From a careful Perusal of the CLASSIC AUTHORS,  
and the Writings of the best GRAMMARIANS.

---

For the Use of Schools both English and Latin.

---

By ROBERT ROSS, A. M. <

---

The Seventh Edition, carefully revised, corrected,  
and enlarged.

---

WITH  
A VOCABULARY,

Containing the Chief of the irregular NOUNS and  
VERBS, and the principal Part of the Words used  
in the SYNTAX, and the first FORTY  
COLLOQUIES of CORDERY. And,

A NEW PREFACE, on the best Method of studying  
GRAMMAR and LANGUAGES.

---

HARTFORD:

Printed by NATHANIEL PATTEN,  
a few Rods North of the Court-House, 1782.





T

tion  
peri  
for i  
educ  
who  
s bo  
and  
the  
in th  
born  
end  
pre-  
s no  
s m  
adv  
elev  
low  
com  
whi  
park  
ble  
gov  
yran  
lav  
B  
age  
mo  
f po  
nen



# P R E F A C E.

**T**HOUGH mankind readily acquire some necessary knowledge by the various powers of perception, with which they are endowed, and their own experience and observation; yet there is large room left for instruction, and great advances may be made by good education. This will appear evident to any person, who shall carefully consider the great difference there is between the polished and christian nations of Europe, and the unlettered tribes of Africa and America; and the superior character which the former have attained in the world beyond the latter. For since mankind are born all equally destitute of knowledge, and are all endowed with rational powers or faculties; this great pre-eminence, which some nations have beyond others, is not to be ascribed so much to their superior genius, as might be imagined at first view, as to the greater advantages they enjoy for religion and learning, which elevate and enlarge the human mind. This must be allowed to be a principal cause, why some nations, in comparison of others, are reputed wise and polished; while such as are left without instruction, are ignorant, barbarous, and wretched; why some enjoy the invaluable blessings of LIBERTY, wholesome laws, and good government; while others groan under the most cruel tyranny, and are depressed into the most abject state of slavery both of body and mind.

But tho' christian nations derive considerable advantages from the modes of education that ordinarily obtain among them, yet, they are not arrived to such a degree of perfection, but that they might make greater improvements in general, if they had a due esteem of their distinguishing

ringuishing privileges, and the education of children and youth could gain their attention in proportion to its importance--- There are many even in this country, who aim at nothing more by sending their children to school, than that they should learn to read a plain chapter with some readiness; write a little; and understand two or three of the common rules of arithmetic. And since it often happens, that schools are not kept above half the year, and sometimes not above three or four months, and that by persons who are but poorly qualified; there are many who never learn even these few necessary things. For children naturally forget in these long intervals when there is no school much of what they had learned. Thus by an ill placed parsimony in supporting proper schools in a steady manner, many lose much of the money they advance, since it is expended to so little purpose, and the children lose their best time and learning, which can hardly ever be regained. The encouragement for school-masters is so small in many places, that the office itself is fallen into contempt. And where a master is despised, it is not to be expected, that a school can be kept under proper government, without which children can never be well instructed. But if common schools were placed on a right footing, and there were sufficient encouragement for men of proper skill, diligence, and character, to undertake the business, it would be accounted one of the most honorable, as it is one of the most useful employments, to instruct children and youth in religion and learning. And if children were kept at school till they were about twelve years old, they might be taught to place the accent on the right syllable, and the emphasis on the proper words, in the due observing of which, good reading principally consists; to write a fair hand; to express their thoughts on paper with a little propriety; and spell with correctness; all which would be often found in after life, to be no less for their profit than honour. Children in general would learn from the directions and examples of good instructors, something of good breeding, and what is com-  
 monly



monly reckoned decent or becoming conduct for young persons, which is a useful accomplishment, and must be a great advantage to them whenever they have occasion to appear in polite company. Good education is a very necessary qualification for any public business or employment. And where persons replenish their minds, in early life, with a good store of useful knowledge, and acquire a taste for books; this will be an excellent antidote against the infirmities & troubles of old age, it will help to divert their minds and sooth their pains. But how wretched and despicable is the man, who, when the years come wherein there is so little of the common pleasures of life to be enjoyed, can employ himself in nothing but in bitter complaints, or take to his bottle, for relief from his growing infirmities and uneasy sensations.

The public would also avoid many difficulties, and receive great benefit, if youth in general were well educated. For there are many children, who are turbulent and unruly, and but ill governed in the families to which they belong; when these grow up without education, they are usually self-conceited and head-strong, and take to the most destructive courses, to the great damage of the country; at best they make very troublesome members either of church or state. Many of the foolish contentions and divisions, that have taken place in both, might be traced to this fountain, and justly ascribed to the ignorance and conceitedness of such persons. Now if such children were kept at school, they might be made to know their own ignorance, innured to good government, to pay a proper deference to their superiors, and become useful and comfortable members of society. Hence some of the wiser heathen nations took a good deal of care about the instruction of their children. 'Tis surely reasonable, that christians should endeavour to excel them in this, since they enjoy much greater privileges, are under greater obligations, and might derive greater benefits from it.

Children and youth in a good school might be made acquainted with the more important principles and evidences

dences, of the christian religion. For this is the best opportunity for that purpose, as their master has them under proper government and command, and can easily induce or oblige them to apply themselves to commit any proper catechism to memory ; and also, as their understandings grow, to comprehend the meaning of it; together with the proofs and reasons by which it is supported. And as the mind is most susceptible of impressions in early life, they would probably learn more in a year or two, when they are about ten or twelve years old, by proper instruction only half a day every week, than they do all their days in the methods they commonly follow. If there were no other mischief or damage attending the want of education, 'tis certainly very shameful for parents to bring up their children in ignorance of the religion of their country, and which they themselves profess. But there is nothing more certain, than that religious knowledge has a powerful tendency to preserve youth from those follies and bad courses, by which many soon spend the estates their parents leave them, and bring disgrace and poverty upon themselves. And tho' some may be so perverse as to abuse the best education, yet ordinarily it will be followed with the most happy consequences. "Train up a child in the way he should go, and when he is old he will not depart from it." Thus a good school would be found to be the cheapest in the long run.

Equal, and in some respects greater, advantages would accrue to the public, if the plan of establishing a good grammar-school in each county, were carried into execution. For whatever ignorant and conceited men may imagine, 'tis for the honour and benefit of both church and state, that a competent number be well acquainted with the learned languages. For 'tis by these we maintain a correspondence with foreign countries ; and learn the transactions of former ages, even from the beginning of the world ; and to imitate the conduct of worthy men that lived in them ; and to avoid the miscarriages into which vain and ignorant persons fell to their own reproach and destruction.

The

The gospel was first propagated and spread among the nations by the gift of tongues. And when an awful apostasy had long taken place in the church, and of consequence in the world, and primitive christianity was almost forgotten, or well-nigh lost amidst heaps of rubbish, senseless and superstitious rites and ceremonies; it was through the blessing of God recovered, by the superior skill, which the renowned reformers had in the original tongues, and their indefatigable industry in translating the SCRIPTURES into the European languages. But tho' the BIBLE be translated with great fidelity, this is far from superseding all necessity and obligation of being acquainted with the original tongues; since without this, darkness, through superstition or enthusiasm, may yet overspread the world. And though the translators were very learned and faithful men, yet they were not inspired, and therefore in such a long work must necessarily fall into many mistakes; so that in all controversies the appeal must be made to the originals. Every language has peculiar idioms, which cannot be literally translated in an intelligible manner, and yet they lose much of their force and beauty, when translated as it were by way of paraphrase. Hence many passages, which seem obscure to those who are not acquainted with the languages, appear plain and beautiful to those who are able to read them in the original tongues. Many of the objections and cavils of infidels are founded on the translation, which, though they may puzzle a mere English reader, yet immediately vanish as soon as the original is carefully consulted and understood. What strange and uncouth expositions do many, who are unacquainted with languages, often give of the scriptures, and thereby expose them to ridicule and contempt! "Unlearned and unstable men—wrest the scriptures to their own destruction."

The greater part of those who begin to learn grammar, by some means or other, after they have spent some considerable time at it, are hindered from prosecuting their studies. And it has often been observed with regret,



met, that such get little or no benefit from what they have learned, which must have been the case when they were taught the common grammar, which was designed only for the advantage of such as become thorough proficient in the language. But the following introduction is formed on such a plan, proper regard being all along had to the English as well as the Latin, that whatever they learn, be it more or less, may be of lasting advantage to them.

There are also many, since literature is not withheld so much from common people as formerly, who are desirous their children should learn something of grammar, while yet they have no design of giving them a college-education. I have endeavoured to pay due attention likewise to these, in this edition, by inserting in the proper places, so much of English grammar as will be sufficient to answer their purpose; and at the same time be a great benefit to those who prosecute the study of the learned languages. This is one of the greatest deficiencies in the grammars that have been commonly taught in schools, which has long required to be supplied, in consequence of which the study and knowledge of the English tongue has been too much neglected. There have been excellent Latin scholars, who could neither speak nor write English with propriety and elegance, which certainly would have been a great embellishment to their education. It was the original design of grammar to teach youth to speak and write their mother-tongue with correctness and purity. It is in this language, they must transact all their common business; and if ever they make a figure at the bar, in the pulpit, or the senate, it must be in the language of their country. It is therefore of the greatest importance to learn to read, write, and speak it, with ease, gracefulness, and force. To attain this is a principal end for which we apply with so much diligence to the dead languages, and one of the greatest advantages we derive from learning them.

How far it is practicable to acquire this by English grammar

grammar alone, I cannot pretend to say, because I never knew a single instance, in the circle of my acquaintance, where the experiment has been fully made. And since a considerable part of the English tongue is derived originally from the Latin, it is probable to me, they will learn it in the easiest and best manner, by being initiated in this (or some such Latin grammar) which is now published entirely in English for this, as well as other important ends and purposes; and thus acquiring a little knowledge of the Latin language, as has been often practised in England, under the great disadvantage of a grammar written chiefly in Latin.

Grammar may be termed in some sense, the abstract science of words, because it considers and teaches the nature and *properties* of words themselves, without attending to the things signified by them. As this is extremely different from the use we commonly make of words, which is to signify things, or the ideas of our minds; it is a work of time, and requires much skill and diligence in the master, as well as great application in the scholar to get any tolerable apprehension of it. The grammar-rules must be committed to memory **VERY PERFECTLY**, and **REPEATED** and **APPLIED** a thousand times, before boys will be able fully to comprehend and recollect them in every instance where they are used. For when we are speaking or writing, we use words in the quickest succession after one another. He would be an awkward speaker indeed, who, when he had spoken one word, must stop, turn to his grammar, and hunt up his rule, before he could speak another. This shews that a linguist must be able to recollect his rules in a moment, without any mistake or hesitation, as readily as he can his name. Now if this dexterity is to be acquired by a mere English-grammar, it will perhaps require as much time to be spent in **PARSING** or applying the rules, as would be sufficient to gain the same knowledge by the following introduction. And even then, they would be unacquainted with the origin and force of such words as are of a Latin derivation. Children are so

B

much.

much accustomed to false grammar in English, it is so familiar to them, that they cannot readily perceive it, and the variation from the rule does not appear so great and remarkable as in Latin, so that it must be more difficult to apprehend it. Thus I cannot but think, it is not very easy, if at all practicable, to obtain a good understanding of grammar by such sketches as we have in our spelling-books, &c. and that the advantage is clearly in favour of the Latin-grammar. And if children of good capacity were to begin with this grammar, and peruse some suitable books, as soon as they can read pretty readily, they might make considerable proficiency in them in a year or two, in a common English school under a good master.

Grammar shews the derivation, connexion and dependence which words springing from the same root, or primitive word, have with one another, and with the root from which they proceed, and how they may be formed and derived from it; so that if you know the sense and meaning of the root, you are instantly made acquainted with all its branches in all the various cases, or moods and tenses, through which it is declined, let them be ever so many. And thus grammar, when it is learned with exactness, abundantly repays all the time and pains taken in committing it to memory; since languages are acquired by it not only with greater accuracy, but in much less time; probably in a tenth part of the time it would take to get such a scanty and vulgar knowledge of them, as people commonly attain by rote of the language of the country where they live. If languages were properly taught, I am fully persuaded, they might be better understood, than they usually are in one half of the time, boys are commonly employed in studying them.----It is so far from being any great labour and intolerable drudgery to commit the grammar to memory, since it is now wholly in English, that it may be looked upon rather as a necessary and an agreeable exercise to enlarge and strengthen it; and thus prepare persons for learning with the like exactness any other art and science.



science, or any beautiful passage they may meet with in their reading.

It is no inconsiderable advantage, which youths are likely to obtain by being taught GRAMMAR THOROUGHLY, that it will be a great help to bring their minds to be steady, and to fix their attention upon the sense and meaning of an author; which, without some such means, is apt to be like a feather driven to and fro, constantly wandering and roving from one thing to another. But in order to acquire this steadiness of attention, they should not be allowed to construe any more than they parse, till they have made good proficiency in the language. For construing without parsing can be no more benefit, as I have found by making full trial, than their reading as much in a dictionary would be, since all that is proposed to be acquired by it is merely the English of Latin words. As this would be allowed to be an improper method of teaching a language, the former must be equally so.----They should also never be permitted to read any author without understanding him. For though they should read a great many books, yet if they do not understand them, or are not able to parse them, they spend their time and money to no valuable purpose. Nay, a negligent cursory manner of reading is in some respects rather worse than nothing, since it indulges the natural inattention and unsteadiness of their minds, and accustoms them to such a careless method of reading books, that they are never likely to understand any author, let him write on what subject or language he will.

But on the contrary, when a youth who has a genius for languages, has learned the Latin by grammar, as has been recommended, he will not only be able to understand any intelligible book, but may also with a great deal of ease make himself a tolerable master of another tongue in a short time, as the French for instance, there being a general connexion in many respects among all languages. And by this means also he will retain without any special difficulty the principal part of what he learns

learns in his youth, to advanced years, and perhaps encrease in knowledge even to old age. But when mens knowledge of grammar is superficial, and they read authors in a hurrying careless manner, they are likely to dissipate their studies, and soon forget the chief part of what they learned, and so lose the benefit of a liberal education. A building may appear grand and showy, but if it have not a good and solid foundation, it will be weak in proportion, soon give way, and fall to the ground.

The foregoing account of grammar, its being abstract and remote from the ordinary apprehension of mankind, clearly shews that it should be written in the language with which learners are best acquainted; and with all the plainness consistent with that brevity, which is requisite in a composition, which must be entirely committed to memory with so much exactness. Any grammar therefore that is written wholly, or even any important part of it in an unknown tongue, as Latin is to beginners, is by no means proper to be taught in schools. For such a grammar is inconceivably more difficult to commit to memory, because it is unintelligible, and of consequence useless to them for a considerable time, even after they have with much labour and fatigue learned to repeat it. This was one of the greatest discouragements scholars used to meet with in acquiring this language, while the absurd custom referred to prevailed, which therefore was most necessary to be entirely removed out of their way. Before the resurrection of learning, darkness covered the land, and thick darkness the people, and learned men in some measure along with the rest. They seem to have imagined there was something SACRED and DIVINE in the sound of the Latin; so that the SCRIPTURES, their PRAYERS, and even the RULES of grammar were in danger of being PROFANED by being turned into any vulgar language; unless perhaps they supposed it to be good policy to keep people in general as ignorant as possible, that they might the more tamely submit to their gross impositions and tyrann

ny. And so strong is the force of custom, bigotry, and prejudice; so little do men think and examine with candor; so slow are they at reformation; that the imagination of its being some benefit that a grammar, at least some considerable part of it, should be in Latin is not yet wholly banished, though nothing can be more silly and ridiculous, when it is represented in a true light. Thus some had rather have the syntaxis and prosody in Latin, though I cannot think of any good reason to support such an opinion, but of many against it; since there are as difficult to be understood as any other part of grammar, and should therefore be written in as plain language as possible. There are many other very important things necessary to be committed to memory; as catechisms, Greek, Hebrew, and French grammars, &c. Why then should boys be forced to spend six or eight months in learning Latin syntaxis and prosody, when by putting them into English, they may be much better learned and understood in one quarter of that time?

An extream seemingly opposite to teaching youth by a grammar chiefly in Latin, and which probably sprung from it, is to begin with some short English compend, which does not contain all that is necessary for boys to learn, only some brief hints at the more important rules. This might be helpful and necessary, while it was the absurd practice to teach this language by a grammar in Latin. But it is not necessary to use such compends, when the whole grammar is composed in as plain English as can be devised. Such compends are so very short and imperfect, that in many places they are not fully intelligible, till recourse is had to a more complete grammar. And why should the same thing be twice learned in words a little different? Does not this tend to perplex and confound the tender mind? Skilful instructors have always remonstrated against the use of a multiplicity of grammars. And where this practice is allowed, boys will be in danger of learning none of the grammars PERFECTLY, and of spending their time in turning from one to another; and consequently they  
are



are not likely to become accurate grammarians and good linguists, where such a method of teaching is followed.

The poets in any age or country are ordinarily few in comparison of the rest of mankind, who speak and write in prose; so that they cannot fix the standard of language by their poems; so far from this, the poets themselves speak and write prose on all common occasions. Poetry is written with a more elevated spirit and style than is commonly used in the country where they live, even by the learned and polite; it abounds with bolder figures of speech, and often uses words in a strained sense for the sake of the verse. It is not the plain and proper language of any nation. This shews that it must be a very absurd custom to teach the languages by the writings of the poets, since they write in a style so peculiar to themselves. Boys should be well skilled in the common idioms of the language, and the purity and elegance of prose, otherwise they cannot possibly apprehend or relish the greater sublimity and beauties of poetry. Without this necessary previous acquaintance with prose-authors, they mangle and murder the poets in the most shocking manner, just as a child who should be put upon reading MILTON'S PARADISE LOST, as soon as he had gone thro' his spelling book.

The common conversation of the more polite and learned, their letters, narratives, and speeches, constitute THE STANDARD of language; for in these they use words in their most natural signification, and the idioms of speech which are most common and approved; and people in general endeavour to imitate them. Therefore such as would teach the languages in the most easy and rational manner should begin and proceed with the plainest of such books; first with translations, but as soon as grammar is well understood, they should lay translations aside. For a constant use of translations prevents boys from exercising their own skill, and encourages a superficial way of reading authors, and thus is very prejudicial to learning. Translations are like a GO-CART in the use of which infants first learn to walk.

But

But surely they would make an aukward figure when they are grown up, if they would never venture to walk or travel without their go-cart. When therefore boys have carefully read and parsed the prose authors, which CLARKE has translated, it is high time to leave their go-cart, and proceed to Castalio's dialogues, the Latin Erasmus, Tully's epistles, Plautus, Terence, &c. without translations.

The Latin is so different from the English, that boys must read a great deal of it, before they will understand it, which will require much time, and great application. Nebuchadnezzar allowed three years for teaching the most promising youths the Chaldean tongue. They commonly allow seven years for learning languages in Europe. But there is no necessity, nor advantage in confining youths to the study of mere languages so closely as they commonly do in their schools. As Boys know but little about English when they begin to learn Latin, they should have some of the best English writers, as the Spectators, &c. put into their hands, that they may imbibe something of their spirit and style. Chronology & geography are necessary helps for reading the Latin historians; and logic for Tully's orations. And rhetoric, especially the tropes and figures, should be taught, as soon as they have a good understanding of the grammar, with the same exactness, and applied with equal frequency at their recitations; since the spirit, the sense and beauty of language depend very much on the proper use of them. Now, if youths can acquire a competent knowledge of Latin, Greek, Hebrew, English, and French, in six or seven years, with these other necessary things, their time will be very well employed. And if they think proper to prosecute their studies further, they will be young enough, being now about 16 or 17, and well prepared to enter any college or university; and not only to read the poets both christian and heathen with ease, pleasure, and profit, but to make great proficiency in every important part of learning suited to their genius. And this will be a good preparation for their entering on

on the immediate study of the business or profession they design to follow, especially if they add a competent knowledge of geometry, where their circumstances render it inconvenient for them to proceed through a complete and regular course of college-education.

N. B. The late very worthy president Burr had observed, in the long course of his teaching, that sundry of L I L L Y's rules were false, and his language grown obsolete and unintelligible in many places, and his method very confused; and, as much of it was in Latin, that learned gentleman looked upon it to be a great hindrance to learning to teach that grammar. Therefore he applied to me, as I lived then at his house, to compile a new introduction, which I did at his request, and it past his inspection, as much as the hurry of his affairs would permit. After his death, in some of the following editions, I received the assistance of the learned Dr. Finley, especially in the prosody. And as it appears from the recommendations of many learned men, who have the principal direction of the education of youth; and the several editions which this grammar has passed thro' in a few years, that it is the grammar, which is commonly used in this country; it has been thought best to enlarge the plan a little, and fit it for both English and Latin schools, that it may be of as much service to mankind in general as possible. Such additions have been made from the best English grammarians, as Dr. Lowth, &c. and my own observation, as will be abundantly sufficient for this purpose. For as I had the liberty of composing this grammar at first, I suppose I have still the right and privilege of correcting and amending it. And since it has cost much reading, pains and labour, to bring it to its present state, it is expected that no printer will be so ungenerous as to print it, without giving me some previous information of his design, that if any further improvements should be tho't of, I may have the opportunity of inserting them.



THE  
AMERICAN  
GRAMMAR, &c.

---

GRAMMAR.

**T**HE articulate Sounds which are called Words, are fixed Marks or Signs of our Thoughts; and the Intention of Men in using them is, or at least should be, to be understood. This requires them to speak and write according to the propriety of that Language, Speech or Tongue, which they use.

Therefore the Study of Grammar is necessary to all, who would speak or write correctly, in any Language. The Word Grammar is derived from the Greeks, who sent their Children to School, to learn to read and write their own Language correctly, in which a Letter is called Gramma.

Grammar is the Art of Speaking and Writing any Language properly; that is, according to the general Usage or Custom of good Speakers and Writers; whether English, Latin, Greek, &c. Its Parts are four; Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.

I. ORTHOGRAPHY.

**O**RTHOGRAPHY teaches how to write Words with proper Letters and Syllables.

The Characters or Letters which are now chiefly used in Books, are the Roman or Latin, of which there are twenty-six in English.

Capital or great Letters. A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z.

Small



Small Letters. a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.

The Letters are thus named, a, or ay, bee, see, dee, e, eff, jee, aitch, i, ja, ka, ell, em, en, o, pee, cu, ar, es, tee, yu, or oo, vee, double yu, ecks, wy, zed.

K, W, X, and Y, are not properly Latin Letters, and are seldom used, unless in words originally Greek.

Et, or and per se, or et for and, is commonly joined to the Alphabet. There are also some compound Characters universally used in Printing, for the Sake of greater Expedition; as, &f, &fl, &c.

The Italic Characters, a, b, c, &c. are often used to distinguish the emphatical Words and Sentences; or a Quotation; and in the Bible, to mark such Words as are not in the Original, but supplied by the Translators.

**Vowels.]** There are five proper Vowels, a, e, i, o, u; and the Rest are Consonants. A Vowel is a Letter that may be sounded by itself, without the Help or joining of any other Letter to it. A Consonant is a Letter which cannot be sounded alone, but must have a Vowel before or after it; as, P<sup>r</sup>t has no Sound, but P<sup>a</sup>rt has.

The Vowels are either short; as, in Lad, let, Fir, rob, cur; or long; as, in Lade, here, Fire, orobel, Cure.

A short Syllable in Latin has this Mark <sup>˘</sup> often placed over it; and a long Syllable has this <sup>—</sup> to shew how they should be pronounced.

A has three Sounds in English; slender, open, and broad.

A slender is used in Words that end in *tion* and *tion*; as, Pace, Race, Creation, Station.

A open is used in such Words as Man, can, Glass. This is used as a short a in Words of one Syllable, formed with the Vowel a, ending in a Consonant; as, bat, cat, mad; and when it comes before two Consonants of the same import, in the Middle of a Word; as, batter, cannot; or, before a single Consonant which sounds double; as, banish, Dragon, habit, &c.

It is long in such Words as Bar, Star, Father. To pronounce this like a slender is sometimes practised by the unlearn-

ed,

ed, but should be carefully avoided, because it gives the same Sound, without any Necessity, to Words that are very different in Sense, and thus confounds them with one another; as, can, Star, by this Means are changed into Cane, stare.

A *broad* is pronounced as if followed by *u* or *w*, as in call, call, Also, before *ld*, *lk*, *lt*; as, in bald, walk, malt; likewise betwixt *w* and *r*; as, in Warrant.

*E* is always pronounced at the End of Words in Latin; but it is generally mute or silent at the End in English, unless in the Article *the*, which is thus spelled to distinguish it from the Pronoun thee; and in he, she, be, we, ye; and in some proper Names, and Words derived from the Greek; as, Phoebe, Hyperbole. This silent *e* often serves to lengthen the preceding Letters; as, Rage, Breath, breathe. It is left out in the Participle in *ing*, derived from Verbs ending in this *e*, as writing from write, not writeing. This *e* after *l* and *r* at the End of a Syllable has a very slender Sound, and is pronounced before them; as, in noble, Ankle, dandle, Eagle, ruffle, People, Massacre, Metre.

It is short at the End of Words and Syllables, ending with one or more Consonants; as, in whet, bed, den, bent, helm, flesh, strength, better, letter, fether, &c.

*i* is sounded long in all Monosyllables ending with *e* silent; and *gh*, *ght*, *gn*, *ld*, *mb*, and *nd*, and their Derivatives; as, in high, night, sign, mild, climb, kind, except build and guild.

*i* is sounded short in all Monosyllables ending with a single Consonant; as, in bid, pit, or with two of the same Consonants; as, in hill, will; and when it stands before two of the same Consonants in the Middle of a Word; as, in winner.

When *i* stands before *r* and another Consonant; as, in dirt, bird, third, it frequently sounds like short *u*, durt, urd thurd; except in Words beginning with *irr*; as, irrevocable, where *i* is short.

*i* is sometimes pronounced like *ai*; as, in Mile, bite; and commonly like *ee* in Words derived from the French;

as,

as, oblige, obleege. No English Word ends in *i*, but is either changed into *y*, or takes an *e* after it; as, easie, or easie.

*O* is long in Words ending in *e* mute; as, in Bone corrode; as, also in their Compounds even where the *e* is omitted; as, in corroding.

It forms a Diphthong with *a*, and has the Sound of long; as, in Moan; and also with *i*, as in foil, toil.

*O* in the Plural of Women, is pronounced like *i* shew from the Saxon Plural Wimen.

*O* short is sounded like *u* thort, in Son, Ton, come London; also, before *l*, *m*, *n*, and *r*; as, in Colour, &c.

*U* is long before *e* mute; as, muse, profuse; and it retains that Sound even in Words wherein the silent *e* is suppressed; as, in Profusion. In other Words it is short as, in but, cut, burst; *u* lengthens the Syllable; as, Rogue.

*U* ends no English Words except thou, and you.

Some pronounce *ou* and *ow* like *y*; as, Acc-young for Account, Ke-yow, for Cow, but this is a very corrupt and uncouth Pronunciation.

To these five Vowels may be added, *w* and *y*, which though they are used like Consonants at the Beginning of Syllables, when placed before other Vowels, yet become Vowels at the End of Syllables.

*W* when used as a Vowel is sounded like *u* long; as, dew. It is often quiescent after *e*; as, in row, mow.

*Y* is borrowed from the Greeks, and takes its Name from the Saxons; and as no English Word ends in *i*, it is now used to supply its Place, as in thy; so also in dying.

*Y* at the End of Words of more than one Syllable is commonly sounded like *e* or *ry*; as, in any, holy.

CONSONANTS.] The Consonants are divided into Semivowels, or Mutes.

Semivowels, or half Vowels, viz. *f*, *b*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *j*, *z*, are so called, because they make a sort of imperfect Sound; *r* seems to be expressed by a quivering of the Tongue.

The MUTES, viz. *b*, *d*, *c*, *g*, *k*, *p*, *q*, *t*, *v*, are so called, because they make no Sound at all without a Vowel.

The Names of the Semivowels begin with a Vowel.



but the Alphabet; as, *eff all*, &c. those of Mutes with a Consonant; as, *hee see* &c.

*l. m n, r*, and sometimes *s*, are called Liquids; because of that easy Motion, with which they nimbly glide away after a Mute in the same Syllable, without any stand, as in *blamish*, *pro* in *probation*; *x* and *z* are called double Letters, because they have the Sound of two Consonants with a Vowel; thus *x* has the Sound of *cs*, *egs* or *ks*.

*B* is not founded in some Words; as, *Bdellium*, *Debt*, *subtle*, *Doubt*, *Lamb*, *Limb*, &c.

*C* is founded hard, like *k*, before *a. o u. l. r*; as, *call*, *soft*, *Cup*, *clean*, *cross*; but soft like *s* before *e. i. y*, and in an Apostrophe (') denoting the absence of *c*; as, *cement*, *airy*, *Cypher*, plac'd for placed.

*Ch* is founded like *sh* in such Words, as, *Church*, *rich*. *b* in Words immediately derived from the French, is commonly founded like *sh*; as, *Chagrin*, *Shagreen*, *Machine*, *Masheen*; also *c* before *ia* or *ie* is founded like *sh*; as, *in sociable*, *malicious*, *suspicion*; but in Words from the Latin, Greek, or Hebrew, the English sound it like *k*; as, *Chymist*, *Kymist*. But to found it like *bb*, or *gb*, would be more agreeable to the ancient Pronunciation; as, *Chymist*, *ghymist*, rather than *Kymist*.

But when such Words have been long adopted and in common Use, they often follow the English Pronunciation; as, *Archbishop*, *Rachel*.

*G* before *e. i. and y*, is often founded soft like *j*; as, *gentle*, *Ginger*, *jentle*, *Jinjer*; but it is founded hard before *a. o. u. b*; also at the End of Words; and when it is doubled; as, *Gall*, *go*, *Gun*, *Ghost*, *King*, *Dagger*.

*Gb* is sometimes founded like *ff*; as, in *Laugh*, *Cough*, *Frough*, &c. And it is Mute in some Words, as *Slaughter*, *Daughter*; and often at the End, as, *though*. Before *e* it serves to lengthen the Syllable like a final *e*; as, *light*, *might*.

*G* is sometimes used before *n* at the Beginning of a Word, but not founded; as, in *gnath*.

*Gn* at the End of a Syllable serves to lengthen it like the final *e*; as, *Benign*, *Design*, *Benine*, *Define*.

*H* is reckoned an Aspiration, or Breathing; it seldom begins

begins any Syllable in a Word, unless the first; it is often quiescent at the Beginning, but especially at the End of Words, when a Vowel immediately precedes in which Instances it might be properly named *H*. But when a Consonant intervenes between it and the Vowel it is well expressed by *aitch*; as, hath, hatchet. In Words derived from the Greek, *b* is placed after *r* but not sounded; as, Rhetoric.

*J* is a Consonant, and should be always written with this long Character *J*, *j* to distinguish it from the Vowel *I*, *i*.

*K* is used in English before *n*, but not sounded; as, *Knee*. It is now generally omitted at the End of Words after *c*: as, Public, Logic.

*L* is doubled at the End of Words of one Syllable; as, tell, well, kill; but it is single at the End of other Words; as, evil; and in such Words it is most commonly placed before *e*, and sounded obscure; as in able Temple; but it is pronounced full and strong when it follows *e*; as *repel*. It is not sounded in some Words; as, Salmon, (Fish) Holburn, Lincoln, &c. Colonel is pronounced Cor, or Curnel.

*M* is sometimes used before *n* at the Beginning of Words derived from the Greek, but not sounded; as, Mnason, Mnemon.

And so also *P* in such Words, as, Psalm, Ptolemy, Phthisic, &c. *Pb* is used for *f* in Words derived from the Greek; as, Philip, Philosopher, not Filip, Filosofher.

*Q* is always followed by *u*. In Words derived from the French it is commonly sounded like *k*; as, Risque, Conquer, Risk, Conker.

*R* has a rough snarling Sound, from which it is called the canine or Dog-Letter.

*S* has properly a hissing Sound; as, in Sister; but it is sounded like *z* before *ion* when a Vowel comes before it; as, Confusion; otherwise it retains its natural Sound as Conversion. It also sounds like *z* before *e* mute, and *r* final; as, refuse, rosy; and also in Besom, Desire, Wisdom, &c. and at the End of Words unless it is doubled.

; as, Trees, Eyes ; except, Yes, this, us, Rebus, Sur-  
 as. The small / should be written in the long Cha-  
 racter in the Beginning and Middle of Words, when it is  
 single, but when it is double, the first should always be  
 ; and when a Word ends in a single , it must be  
 written in the short Character: as, singleness, his, not  
 gleness, his.

before a Vowel is sounded like *hi*, or *fi*; as, Salva-  
 n; except at the Beginning of a Word, as, Tiara: for  
 en, comes immediately before it: as, in Question,  
 Words derived from such as end in y; as, mightier  
 in mighty. *h* has two Sounds, the one soft; as in  
 as; the other hard; as in Thing, think.

*Wh* is sounded like *bw*, but it is entirely lost in Whole,  
 wholesome; and it has but little Force before *r*; as, in  
 rath, Wretch.

*Y* and *Z* may be placed before all Vowels, but before  
 Consonants in our Language.

*X* and *Z* are very seldom placed at the Beginning of  
 Words in English or Latin, unless they are of a Greek  
 original.

*Notes.* The foregoing Rules have been formed from  
 the English Tongue; yet they may serve us for the Latin,  
 since it has long been a dead Language; and we com-  
 monly speak it as we do our vernacular Tongue. It is  
 possible at this Distance of Time, to acquire the true  
 pronunciation of the ANCIENT ROMANS; and if we  
 could, it would be no great Advantage to us, Latin not  
 being spoken by any Nation at present, and in many  
 words it would sound very harshly to the Ear: The Ro-  
 mans for Instance pronounce the *c* and *g* always hard;  
 and *i* uniformly according to its natural Sound; as,  
 amici, amice, Amiki, amike, Salvatyo, Amicitya.

[DIPHTHONGS.] A Diphthong is the Meeting, Union  
 Coalition of two Vowels in one and the same Syllable;  
 and it is either proper or improper. A proper Diph-  
 thong is, when both the Vowels are sounded; of which  
 there are these, *ai*, or *ay*, *aw*, *ei*, *ei*, *ou*, or *ow*; as, in  
 Aid, Hawk, &c. An

To these may be added such Gentiles; as,  
 Egyptian, Cretian.



An improper Diphthong is, when only one of the Vowels is founded; as, *ea, eo, eu, ie ea, iu, oe*; as, in *Bread, Leopard, People, build, &c.* *Ai* and *oi*, are written at the Beginning and Middle of Words, but are changed into *ay* and *oy*, at the End.

We pronounce *e* and *o* like *i*, and therefore account them improper Diphthongs in Latin. They are sometimes written *ae* and *oe*, and are seldom used in English, unless in some few Words derived from the Latin or Greek, being changed into the simple *i*; as, *Eneas*.

The proper Diphthongs in Latin are, *ai, au, ei, eu, eu, oi*, or *ie*; as, *Aio, Audio, Hei, Oileus, Quousque, Harpuia, or Harpyia*.

A Triphthong is the Meeting of three Vowels in one Syllable, which is but seldom in English, except in Words derived from the French; as, *Beau, Lieu*.

**SYLLABLES.**] A Syllable is a perfect, distinct Sound, which there is always at least one Vowel. There are always as many Syllables in a Word, as there are distinct Sounds. The putting of Letters together to make Syllables; and the joining Syllables together to make Words, is called Spelling; as *M, a, n, Man*: *W, o, m, a, n, man*, which two Syllables being joined together make *Woman*. And according as Words consist of one, two, three, or more Syllables, they are called by the learned, *Monosyllables, Dissyllables, Trisyllables, and Polysyllables*, from Greek Words signifying one, two, three, many.

Words may be divided into Syllables by the following Rules.

1. When a Consonant comes between two Vowels, it is to be joined with the latter; as, *a-bare, Pa-per*, except *x*, as, *Ox-en*; and sometimes *p*, as *up-on*.

2. When two Vowels come together, each having a distinct Sound, they should be divided; as, *re-a, Po-et*.

3. When two Consonants come together in the Middle of a Word, they should be divided; as, *com-mo, Sen-tence*.

4. A Mute unites with a Liquid following; and a Liquid or Mute, generally separates from a Mute following: *le* and *re* are never separated from a preceding Mute; as, *ex-e-cra-ble*, *ex-as-pe-rate*, *dis-tin-guish*, *dis-tress-ful*.

5. When Words are easily known to be compounded, they may be divided according to their original Parts; as, *Non-sense*, *Drink-ing*, *pre-par-ed*.

Where the foregoing Rules fail, or Persons meet with great Difficulty in applying them, they may divide Words in Spelling as they sound best to the Ear, when they are rightly pronounced; and in Writing, as they appear most agreeable to the Eye.

**CAPITALS]** Capitals or great Letters are used at the beginning of Sentences, Verses in Poetry, and in the title, proper Names, and remarkable Words. And where there is some Difficulty to determine in many Cases, which are the Words of special Importance, it has been a Custom in many Books to print every substantive with a Capital or great Letter. But it is very improper to write other Words with a Capital, except in the Cases abovementioned. The Pronoun *I*, and the Interjection *O*, must always be Capitals.

But Capitals, when found alone, sometimes stand for abbreviations. As,

A. B. Artium Baccalaureus, Batchelor of Arts.

Abp. Archbishop.

A. D. Anno Domini, The Year of our Lord.

Admsrs. Administrators.

A. M. Artium Magister, Master of Arts.

— Anno Mundi, The Year of the World.

— Ante Meridiem, Before Noon. Ass. Assigns.

Ast. P. G. C. Astronomy Professor of Gresham College.

A. U. C. Anno Urbis Conditiæ; or, Ab urbe condita, The Year from the Building the City Rome.

B. D. Batchelor of Divinity.

B. V. Beata Virgo. Bucks. Buckinghamshire.

C. Centum. Cap. Caput. Chapter. Cler. Clericus.

Coff. Consulibus. Co. Company. Col. Colonel.

- C. P. S. Custos Privati Sigilli. C. S. Custos Sigilli.  
 Cur. Curator. Dr. Doctor.  
 D. D. Doctor of Divinity. D. Denarius.  
 Dec. December. Do. Ditto.  
 E. G. Exempli Gratia.  
 F. R. S. Frater Regalis Societatis. Ibid. Ibid.  
   i. e. id est.  
 I. H. S. Jesus Hominum Salvator.  
 Imp. Imperator. Imp. Imperatoribus.  
 J. D. Jurium Doctor.  
 L. Liber, and Libra. LL. D. Legum Doctor.  
   m. manipulus.  
 M. B. Medicinæ Baccalaureus.  
 M. D. Medicinæ Doctor.  
 M. S. Manuscriptum, and Memoriz Sacrum.  
 MSS. Manuscripta.  
 N. B. Nota Bene, Mark well. n. l. non liquet.  
 N. S. New Stile.  
 O. S. Old Stile. Ob. Objectio. P. C. Patres Conscripti.  
 P. M. Post Meridiem. P. M. G. Professor of Mathematics  
   at Gresham College.  
 P. R. Populus Romanus. P. S. Postscript.  
 Pen. Penultimo, The last but one.  
 Q. Questio. q. d. quasi dicat. q. l. quantum libet  
   q. f. quantum sufficit.  
 R. S. S. Regiæ Societatis Socius, Fellow of the Royal  
   Society.  
 Reg. Prof. Regius Professor. R. P. Respublica.  
 S. Solidus, A Shilling. S. D. Salutem dicit.  
 St. Saint. S. P. Salutem precatur.  
 S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit.  
 S. V. B. E. E. Q. V. Si vales bene est, ego quoque  
   valeo.  
 S. C. Senatus Consultum.  
 S. P. Q. R. Senatus Populusque Romanus.  
 S. T. D. Sacræ Theologiæ Doctor. ff. scilicet.  
 S. T. P. Sanctæ Theologiæ Professor.  
 S. S. Sacra Scriptura. SS. T. Sacro-sancto Trinitatis.  
 U. J. D. Utriusque Juris Doctor.



V. D. M. Verbi Dei Minister.

viz. videlicet. ult. ultimo.

&c. etc. et cætera, and so forth; *or*, and the rest; *or*, with the rest; *or*, and the like. When this is used in Latin, the Adjective *cætera*, is understood to be varied, as the Case and Gender may require.

But Contractions are not to be much used in writing. Sometimes Capitals stand for a Latin Prænomen; (for the Romans had usually three, and often four) as, 1. Publius, 2. Cornelius, 3. Scipio, 4. Africanus. The first their Prænomen, or proper Name; 2. Nomen, or Name of their Stock or Ancestors; 3. Cognomen, or Name of their particular Family; 4. Agnomen, or Name given them from some remarkable Deed or Event. Thus A. stands for Julius; C. Caius, Caia; D. Decius; G. Gaius; L. Lucius, or Lucia; M. Marcus, or Marcia; P. Publius; Q. Quintus; S. Sextus; Sp. Spurius; T. Titus, or Tullius, &c.

The Romans likewise used seven of the Capitals to express their Numbers by, which may be called Numeral Letters.

I; V. 5; X. 10; L. 50; C. 100; D. 500; M. 1000.

The Reasons may be these. M being the first Letter Mille, stands for 1000; which M was formerly written *ML*. Half of that 10 or D is 500. C the first Letter of Centum, stands for 100; which C was anciently written *LL*; and so half of it will be L 50. X denotes 10, which is twice 5, and made of two V's, one at the top and the other at the Bottom. V stands for 5, because their Measure of five Ounces was of that Shape. And I stands for 1, because it is made with one Stroke of the pen, or because it is the first Letter of Initium, Beginning.

The Rules are, 1. If a less Number stands before a greater, the less must be taken from the greater; as, IV, 4; IX, 9; XL, 40, &c.

2. If a less Number follows a greater, the less must be added to the greater; as VI, 6; XI, 11; LX, 60; CX, 100, &c. Example;

London

London was burnt in the Year } MDCLXVI, }  
 or, } 1666  
 CXCICLXVI.

**STOPS.]** A Stop is a Pause or Rest of the Voice in Reading, not merely for the Sake of taking Breath, but also to separate the Parts of Speech, to divide Sentences, and at the same Time to point out their Relation and Connexion.

A just Observation of Stops serves to illustrate the Sense, but an improper use will obscure it. They should therefore be early and constantly observed with the greatest Care.

The Stops which are used in Reading and Writing are six :

A Comma , A Colon : An Interrogation ?  
 A Semicolon ; A Period . An Exclamation !

A Comma requires a Pause while the Reader can leisurely say One, and separates the simple Members of a Sentence ; that is, such as consist of one Nominative and one Verb ; as, I come to the Pleasures of a virtuous Life, with which all good Men are delighted, which are not impaired by Time, and yield Satisfaction to a rational Being.

It is used in these and the like Cases, 1. Where there are several Nominatives and finite Verbs expressed or implied. 2. To separate Nouns put in Apposition. 3. To distinguish every Vocative and Ablative absolutely. 4. Before every, &c. 5. To separate short and independent Clauses, and frequently before the Relative who and which ; as, When they arrived, Gentlemen says Regulus, who was the Roman General, the Soldiers being present, Virtue, Industry, Fidelity and Frugality are the Privileges of the Romans, the Governors of the World, who conquer, vanquish and subdue, &c. to reign wisely, soberly and justly.

A Colon, and a Semicolon require a longer Rest in Reading. and tho' frequently used promiscuously, they may be thus distinguished, viz. A Colon distinguishes

the conjunct Members of a Sentence, that is, such as contain several Nominatives and finite Verbs, either expressly or implicitly, which may be divided into other Members, whereof one, at least, is conjunct; thus, As we perceive the Shadow has moved on the Dial, though no Body ever saw it move; and that the Grass grows, though no Body ever saw it grow: So the Advances we make in Knowledge, as they consist of such minute Steps, are only perceived by the Distance gone over. The Advancement in Knowledge is compared to the Motion of the Shadow, and the Growth of Grass; which Comparison divides the Sentence into two principal Parts: But since the first contains two principal Members, they are to be separated by a Semicolon; consequently the other Part must be separated by a higher Pointing, viz. a Colon.

1. Besides the foregoing Difference, a Semicolon is to be used when a Sentence is divided into large and equal Parts, if one of them be conjunct; as, Whoever is overtaken with Poverty; the same shall find Coldness and Contempt will follow.

2. When the Members are opposite one to another, but relate to the same Verb, they are separated by a Semicolon; as, On this side is Modesty; on that Impudence; on this Fidelity; on that Deceit.

3. In such Sentences where the Whole goes before, the Parts follow; as, The Parts of Grammar are four; Orthography, Etymology, &c.

A Period is put at the End of a Sentence, or a short Compass of Discourse, which contains perfect Sense, and requires a Rest while the Reader may count four or five.

When a Discourse is divided into Paragraphs or Breaks, that is, when the Line is broken or left imperfect, and the next begins under the second or third Letter of the preceding Line; there should be a Stop made in Reading, as long as two Periods. When there is the Space of a whole Line left vacant, this is called a double Paragraph, and requires a Stop twice as long as the single Paragraph.

An Interrogation is the Sign of asking a Question; as, Who will read this? Who is there? Questions



Questions are asked to obtain Information in Things with which we are unacquainted, and desire to know. But sometimes they are asked to give an Opportunity to relate the Matter, as when Christ asked his two Disciples, "What Communications are these that ye have one another, and are sad?"

Questions are often used by Way of pointed Address, to stir up Persons to think what Answer they can give; and also in chiding or upbraiding. And in these Cases the Answer is suppressed, through Eagerness, yet is easily understood whether affirmative or negative. And hence Interrogative-Sentences often imply the strongest Assertions or Denials; as, How shall we escape if we neglect so great Salvation?

An Apostrophe or Exclamation, should be used after any Thing, that is very strange; a sudden and vehement Outcry; or a very solemn and pathetical Sentence; as, O the Cares of Men! Be astonished, O ye Heavens at this

To these may be added,

I. A Parenthesis ( ) which includes Part of a Sentence in another, not absolutely necessary to complete the Sense or Meaning, and therefore it may be left out, and the Sense remain almost entire; as, Teach me (I pray you) to read.

As Parentheses interrupt, and in some Measure obscure the Sense, they should not be used without Necessity; and when used, they should never be long.

Brackets are marked thus, [ ] and have some Resemblance to the Parenthesis, only they include Words inserted chiefly to explain something that is discoursed of, or something to be explained; and sometimes which may be used instead of those expressed in the Sentence. Both these require a short Pause before and after them.

A Blank Line ——— also denotes a Pause. It is sometimes used to shew that the Expression is abrupt, through Vehemence of Passion; but it generally denotes that some Letters in a Word, or Words in a Sentence, or Sentences in a Discourse are left out, and therefore frequently used in abridging Speeches, &c.

An Hyphen - joins two Words into one ; as, Foot-stool, water-familias. It is also used to connect the Syllables of a Word written, Part at the End of one Line, and Part, for Want of Room, at the Beginning of the next ; and this Division should always be made as the Word is naturally divided into Syllables ; as, Gram-mar, not gra-mmar.

A Diæresis .. divides Diphthongs, and makes two Syllables of that, which without it would be but one ; as, æris, sounds a-e-ris, not æris.

An Apostrophe is the Mark of a Letter left out ; as, 'd for used ; Tun' habes ? for Tune habes ? But as the leaving out of Vowels in English, tends to make the Language more rough, it should be done very sparingly, unless where it is the Sign of a Genitive Case.

Sections § and Paragraphs ¶ are sometimes put at the beginning of a new Section and Paragraph of Discourse. Paragraphs are chiefly used in the Bible.

A Quotation " " denotes that an Author is quoted in his own Words, and it always begins with a Capital. Speeches or Orations in History are sometimes marked with it.

A Caret ^ is used only in Writing, when some Letter, Syllable, Word, or Clause of a Sentence happens to be forgotten ; it is put under the Line where the Word is to be inserted.

Afterism or Star \* directs to some Remark in the Margin, or Bottom of the Page. Several of these together, shew that there is something wanting, or immodest in the Author.

Index ☞ signifies that the Sentence pointed to, is especially remarkable.

References † ‡ ¶ refer to something in the Margin worthy of Notice.

Braces { } are used to couple two or more Words together, that have some Relation to one another.—Also frequently in Poetry, when three Lines have the same Rhyme or Ending, which are called a Triplet.

To this Account of the Points and Marks may be added a brief Explanation of Accent, Emphasis, and Cadence.

An Accent is the pronouncing any particular Syllable in a Word, with a stronger Voice than the rest; and then the other Syllables of the Word are pronounced less forcibly.

Sometimes it is used to distinguish a Noun from a Verb when they are spelled alike; as, a Récord, to récord.

Emphasis is the Pointing out of some particular Word or Words in a Sentence, on which the Sense of the sentence chiefly depends, with some LITTLE Force and Elevation of Voice, while the other Words are pronounced more lightly and hastily.

Emphasis is most necessary to be constantly observed both to gratify the Ear, and also, in many Cases, to make the particular Meaning of the Sentence plain, which will vary by being placed on different Words; as may be illustrated by the Instructor in this short Question. Shall you ride to Town to Day?

When Boys are construing an Author, after they have made some considerable Progress in Latin, they should not be allowed to turn the Words each singly by itself into English, as this would break the Sense too much and hinder their apprehending the Meaning; but always take as much of the Sentence together at least, as is comprised by a Semicolon, or a Comma.

Cadence, the Reverse of Emphasis, generally takes Place at the End of a Sentence, when the Words or Syllables, though sounded full and distinct, and to be heard as plain as the rest, yet are pronounced with an easy and graceful falling of the Voice.

The principal Faults in reading are,

1. A passing over it in such a hasty, careless Manner as to give Words a Name, without attending whether they call them right or not. Such Readers should remember, this is not to read, but to mis-call; and that the Alteration of a single Letter, will often quite spoil



Sense intended; as, leave out *c* in *changed*, and it  
 ns it into *hanged*.

3. A stopping after every two or three Words, though  
 Sense should not require a Pause; by which Means  
 y delay Words in immediate Connexion, and are tire-  
 e to the Hearers.

4. A drawing their Words——4. A mumbling, clip-  
 g or swallowing their Words, leaving out some Syl-  
 les in the long Words, and never pronouncing the  
 rt ones at all.

5. Another great Fault in Pronunciation is, when  
 fons speak too quick, by which Means they cannot  
 understood, and so had as good not read.

6. A Monotony, or an uniform Tone of Voice, without  
 phasis, or Cadence, or apparent Regard to the Sense  
 Subject that is read.

7. A singing Tone is very common, but very disgustful  
 Persons of Delicacy and Judgment.

8. Also an affecting to read and speak as others do: For  
 n were designed to be distinguished by their Voices,  
 well as by their Faces; so that every Person has a na-  
 al Voice which is proper to himself. All Affectation  
 erefore, will appear unnatural, forced and disagree-  
 e. They should carefully observe such as are good  
 aders, but never try to mimic their peculiar Voice.

To avoid these and every other Fault, let Persons,  
 1. Accustom themselves to observe their Stops, Em-  
 asis, and Cadence.

2. Let them endeavour to read with the same Ease and  
 eedom, and pronounce their Words and Sentences in  
 e same Manner as in private Conversation. This is the  
 AND Rule, by observing which, every Person may at-  
 n the Art of good Reading.

3. The Pronunciation should vary in general accord-  
 g to the several Sorts of Stile; the FAMILIAR, the  
 LEMN, and the PATHETIC. It would be very improper  
 d ridiculous, to read a common News-Paper, or Let-  
 about Business, as you would a grave Discourse on a  
 lemn Occasion.

## II. ETYMOLOGY.

**T**HE Etymology of Words teaches their Derivation, and is often an useful Help to shew their true Sense; as, Fisher, Fisherman, from the Primitive Fish.

But Etymology, when it is used to signify the second Part of Grammar, divides Words into the proper distinct Classes, and considers their several Endings by Number, Case, Gender, Declension, Moods, Tenses, &c.

The Latin Tongue is divided into these eight Parts :

Noun,	{	which are declined, or changed at the End, or last Syllable	Adverb,	{	which are undeclined, or not changed at the End
Pronoun,			Conjunction		
Verb,			Preposition,		
Participle			Interjection.		

## I. NOUN.

A Noun is either Substantive or Adjective.

A Substantive Noun is the Name of any Thing; as, Arbor, a Tree; Mensa, a Table; Ventus, the Wind.

An Adjective Noun is the Name of some Quality or Property of a Thing; as bonus, good; durus, hard; albus, white.

A Substantive may be further distinguished from an Adjective thus;

---

Since all Discourse must be about THINGS, their PARTS, ACTIONS, and RELATIONS; were it not for long established Custom, we might divide Speech into four Parts, viz. NOUN, ADNOUN, VERB, and PARTICLE.

1. A Substantive has commonly one of the Articles *a*, *an*, or *the*, before it in English.

2. A Substantive can stand in a Sentence, so as to make Sense, without an Adjective; but an Adjective cannot stand without a Substantive; as, we say, a Stone falls; but we never say, heavy falls.

3. If the Word *Thing* be joined with an Adjective, it will make Sense; but if it be joined with a Substantive, it makes Nonsense; as we say, a good Thing; but never, a Man Thing, a Beast Thing.

Substantives, according as their Signification is more or less enlarged, are divided into common or general Names, and proper or particular Names.

A common Noun (called also Appellative) is a Name, which can be applied to signify many things in general, without pointing out any one more particularly than another. Thus, when we speak of a Sheep, a Pigeon, a Stone, we commonly mean any Sheep, Pigeon, or Stone.

NOTE. When Words are thus used to represent whole kinds or Sorts of Things, each of which may contain many Individuals, it is on the Account of their Agreement in some common Nature, general Properties, or likenesses, which in some Respect they have to one another.

As to the greater Part of Things, we can only observe and know their common Properties, and we must speak of them in this View. Therefore the greater Part of Words in all Languages, are GENERAL Terms, or common Nouns.

A particular or proper Name is used, when there is Occasion



Occasion to mention this, or that particular Person or Place or Thing; as, Peter, London.

Though proper Names are thus appropriated to Individuals, yet they may become common or appellative applying them to several Particulars; as, the two Cæsars. But this happens but seldom.

**NUMBERS.]** Whatever is spoken of is represented as one, or more than one in Number. Hence,

There are two Numbers; the singular which denotes one Thing; as, a Book, **LIBER**: The plural, which notes more than one Thing; as, Books, **LIBRI**.

The plural Number in English is commonly formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, Book, Books; Stick, Sticks. But when the singular ends in *ch*, *sh*, *ss*, or *z*, then the plural is formed by adding *es*; as, Church, Church-es. But when it ends in *f*, or *vi*, the plural is formed by changing them into *ves*; as, Calf-ves, Life-ves.

Sundry are irregular, which may be learned by Observation.

Proper Names being used to signify Individuals have no plural Number; to these may be added Names of Metals, Herbs, Virtues, Vices, &c. Some have no singular; as, Tongues, Sheers, &c.

**CASES.]** The Cases, through which Nouns are varied, are six; the Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

**DECLENSIONS.]** The Declensions, or Ways of changing Nouns at the End are five, which may be known by the Ending of the Genitive Case singular: Thus, the Genitive of the first Declension ends in *e*,—the second in *i*,—the third in *is*,—the fourth in *us*—the fifth in *ei*.

The English can hardly be said to have either Declensions, or Cases, but instead of changing Names at the End, they put some Particles before them, thus:

1. If a Thing be only named with *a*, *an*, or *the*, before the Name, and a Verb follow, it answers to the Nominative in Latin.

2. Declining in Latin properly begins in the Case, called the Genitive, *q. d.* the Generative or Begetting Case, because the following Cases spring from it. It has the Particle *of* before it in English, or an Apostrophe (') with *'s* at the End; as, the Palace of the King, or the King's Palace.

*Note.* When the Genitive is expressed by an Apostrophe, it is a Contraction for the old Saxon Genitive, which ended in *is*; as, King*is* Palace. The Apostrophe is omitted for the most Part in Nouns, which end in *s*; especially in the plural Number; as, for Righteousness Sake; on Eagles Wings, because it would be difficult to pronounce such Phrases, if another *'* were inserted.

3. The Particles *to*, *unto* and *for*, before a Noun denote the Dative or Giving Case.

4. The Accusative commonly follows the Verb, and has *a* or *the* before it like the Nominative.

5. The Vocative, or calling Case, has always *O*, or *Oh* expressed or understood before it; and it is like the Nominative in Latin, except in Nouns of the second Declension, ending in *us*; which have their Voc. in *e*. It is commonly without Articles before it in English.

6. In, with, thro', from, by, are the usual Signs of the Ablative.

ARTICLES.] The Latins used their Nouns always without Articles, so that it is with great Impropriety, that some Grammarians have introduced them in the Declensions; but the English use their Nouns with or without Articles, as follows:

1. A Substantive without any Article to limit it, is taken in its widest Sense: Thus, Man, means all Mankind. Hence,

An Article is a Word put before Substantives, to point them out, and shew how far their Signification extends; of which there are two in English, *a* and *the*.

*A* is used in a vague Sense, and refers to one single Thing

Thing of the Kind, which is not expressly pointed out in other Respects. It seems to be an Article of Number, and signifies almost as much as *one*, and is set before Nouns in the singular only, except such Words as are used collectively, which happens chiefly in such Phrases as, a few Men; a great many; an hundred; a thousand &c. This Article is called Indefinite, because tho' it refers in its natural Use to some one Person, or Thing, it is in a large indeterminate Sense, and does not precisely shew what particular Person or Thing is meant as, A Man shall be commended according to his Wisdom; that is, any Man.

*A* is used before a Consonant, *an* before a Vowel, and a silent *h*, to render the Pronunciation smooth and agreeable; as, *a* Speaker, *an* Eye, *an* Hour, but *a* Hare, *a* Hand, &c.

*The* is used both in the singular and plural; it may be called a definite Article, because it confines or limits a Word to some certain Person or Thing. It signifies almost the same as *this* singular, *these* plural.

Proper Names being the Names of Individuals, and therefore of Things as determinate as they can be made, admit not of Articles, unless for the Sake of Distinction, or Praise; as, He is *a* Marlborough, that is, one like the brave Marlborough. Also the Names of particular Virtues, Vices, Metals, Herbs, &c. are used without Articles.

Adjectives and Pronouns not being the Names of Things have no Articles before them, except when Adjectives are joined with Substantives; as, a good Man: When they are used substantively, they have frequently the definite Article; as, the Righteous, the Wicked.

This Article is sometimes applied to Comparatives, and Superlatives, especially to Adverbs to mark the Degree the more strongly; as, the more I examine it, the better I like it. I like this the least of any.

*Note.* It is very improper in many Instances, to use the one Article for the other, which may be avoided by the foregoing Rules; but they seem to be sometimes used differently,



ifferently, in which Cases the Word is to be used with  
at Article which sounds best to the Ear.

The last Syllable but one of the Genitive Plural in  
um, orum, and erum, is long, and in the Dative and  
blative in *ibus*, is short.

### The five DECLENSIONS.

#### I. The Genitive in æ, Penna, æ, a Pen.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

1. Penn-a, a Pen.

N. Penn-æ, Pens,

2. Penn\*æ, of a Pen,

G. Penn-arum, of Pens,

3. Penn-æ, to a Pen,

D. Penn-is, to Pens,

4. Penn-am, a Pen,

A. Penn-as, Pens,

5. Pennâ, O Pen,

V. Penn-æ, O Pens,

6. Penn-a: with or by a Pen. A. Penn-is, with, or by  
( Pens.

\* The Genitive sometimes in *ai*, or *as*.

Litera, æ, a Letter.

Schol-a, æ, a School.

Via, æ, a Way.

Musa, æ, a Song.

Menſa, æ, a Table.\*

Gemma, æ, a Jewel.

Let Learners be directed to give the English of the o-  
ther Examples, with the Signs of the Cases in like Man-  
ner; which Experience has proved to be very useful.

#### I. The Genitive in *i*, as, Puer, *i*, a Boy; Annus, *i*; a Year; Bellum, *i*, War.

1. Puer, N. Puer-*i*,

Vir, iri, a Man.

2. Puer-*i*, G. Puer-orum,

Liber, bri, a Book.

3. Puer-o, D. Puer-is,

Ager, gri, a Field.

4. Puer-um Acc. Puer-os,

Aper, pri, a Boar.

5. Puer, V. Puer-*i*,

Culter, tri, a Knife.

6. Puer-o: Ab. Puer-is.

The Voc. is like the Nom. in all Declensions,  
except

except in Nouns of the second, ending in *u* which make their Voc. in *e*; as, Nom. an-nus, Voc. an-ne.

N. Annus,	N. Ann-i,	Campus, i, a Plain
G. Ann-i,	G. Ann-orum,	Equus, i, a Horse.
D. Ann-o.	D. Ann-is,	Oculus, i, an Eye
A. Ann-um,	A. Ann-os,	Ventus, i, the Wind
V. Ann-e,	V. Ann-i,	Taurus, i, a Bull.
A. Ann-o :	A. Ann-is.	

All Nouns of the neuter Gender, have their Nom. Acc. and Voc. alike in both Numbers, and in the plural, these Cases end all in *a*; as, Bellum, *i*, War

Neuters.	N. Acc. & V. Bellum,	N. Acc. & V. Bella,	} Regnum, i, Kingdom. Signum, i, a Sign. Donum, i, (Gift)
	G. Belli,	G. Bellorum,	
	D. & Ab. Bello :	D. & Ab. Bellis.	

III. The Genitive in *is*, as, Nubes, *is* a Cloud, Leo *onis*, a Lion.

N. Nubes,	N. Nubes	Rupes, <i>is</i> , a Rock,
G. Nubis,	G. Nubium,	Caro, <i>nis</i> , Flesh.
D. Nubi,	D. Nubibus,	Ensis, <i>is</i> , a Sword.
Acc. Nubem,	Acc. Nubes,	Mensis, <i>is</i> , a Month
V. Nubes,	V. Nubes,	Nox, <i>ctis</i> , Night.
Ab. Nube :	Ab. Nubibus.	

N. Leo,	N. Leones,	Sermo, <i>onis</i> , Speech
G. Leonis,	G. Leonum,	Lex, <i>egis</i> , Law.
D. Leoni,	D. Leonibus,	Rex, <i>egis</i> , a King.
Acc. Leonem,	Acc. Leones,	Dolor, <i>oris</i> , Grief.
V. Leo,	V. Leones,	
Ab. Leone :	Ab. Leonibus.	Pater, <i>tris</i> , a Father
		N. Acc.

Acc. V. Opus, N. Acc. V. Optra, } Corpus, oris, a Body.  
 G. Operis, G. Operum, } Genus, eris, a Kind.  
 D. Operi, D. & Ab. Operibus, } Nomen, inis, a Name  
 Ab. Opere : Caput, itis, the Head.

But Neuters in *us*, *er*, and *o*, are thus declined :

Acc. V. Sedile, N. Acc. V. Sedilia, } Animal, alis.  
 G. Sedilis, G. Sedilium, } Calcar, aris, a  
 D. Ab. Sedili : D. Ab. Sedilibus. } Spur.

IV. The Genitive in *us*, *as*, Gradus, *us*, a Step.

Gradus, N. Gradus, } Vultus, *us*, the Face.  
 Gradus, G. Graduum, } Fructus, *us*, Fruit.  
 Gradui, D. Gradibus, } Visus, *us*, the Sight.  
 Acc. Gradum, Acc. Gradus, } Sensus, *us*, Sense.  
 Gradus, V. Gradus, } Manus, *us*, a Hand.  
 Ab. Gradu : Ab. Gradibus. }

Nouns in *us*, are not declined in the singular Number :

*Cornu*, a Horn, in all Cases sing : Plur. N. Acc. V.  
*cornua*, G. *Cornuum*, D. and Ab. *Cornibus*.

V. The Genitive in *ei* ; *as*, Facies, *ei*, a Face.

Facies, N. Facies, } Res, *ei*, a Thing.  
 Faciei,\* G. Facierum, } Spes, *ei*, Hope.  
 Faciei, D. Faciebus, } Acies, *ei*, an Edge.  
 Acc. Faciem, Acc. Facies, } Fides, *ei*, Faith.  
 Facies, V. Facies, } Dies, *ei*, a Day.  
 Ab. Facie : Ab. Faciebus. }

\* The G. in *ei*, *es*, *e*, very seldom.

The Noun *Domus* a *House*, being a little peculiar,  
 partly of the second, and partly of the fourth Declension,  
 is here declined at large.

Singular.

N. *Domus*, a House,  
 G. *Domus*, or *Domus*, of a House,  
 D. *Domo*, or *Domui*, to, unto or for a House,  
 Acc. *Domum*, a House, the House,  
 V. *Domus*, O House,  
 Ab. *Domo*, with, from, by or in a House.

F

Plural.



## Plural.

- N. Domus, Houses, the Houses,  
 G. Domorum, *or* Domuum, of Houses,  
 D. Domibus, to, unto, *or* for Houses,  
 Acc. Domos, *or* Domus, Houses, the Houses,  
 V. Domus, O Houses,  
 Ab. Domibus, with, from, by *or* in Houses.

Exceptions from the common Examples in the Declensions, for the Use of those, who have made some good Proficiency in the Latin Tongue.

1. Filia, Nata, Dea, Domina, Socia, Famula, Serva, Anima, Equa, Mula, Asina, of the first Declension frequently make *abus* in the Dat; and Ab. plural, to distinguish them from their Masculines in *us* of the second. Also the Genitive is sometimes, very rarely, *ai*, or *as*.

2. Populus, Vulgus, Agnus, Lucus, Chorus, Fluvius, Bacchus, of the second, make their Voc. in *e* or *us*.

3. Proper Names in *ius*, with Filius and Genius, lose *us* in the Voc; as, Georgi, Fili, Geni. Deus, God, the most commonly Deus in the Voc. Plurally N. and Ab. *Dii*, G. Deorum, D. and Ab. *Dii*.

4. Proper Names in *is* of the third, except those of Men and Women, make *im* or *in* in the Acc. And the following make Acc. *im*, and Ab. *i*. Vis, Sitis, Ratis, Tuffis, Cannabis, Cucumis, Sinapis, Amussis.

5. Some make Acc. *em* or *im*, Ab. *e* or *i*; as, Clavus, Cutis, Febris, Messis, Navis, Puppis, &c.

6. The Names of Months make their Ab. in *i*; as, Januarius, &c. some others sometimes; as, Amnis, Ignis, Pars, &c.

7. All Nouns that make *i* in the Ablative singular, and Nouns not encreasing in the Genitive; and Nouns that end in two Consonants, form the Genitive plural in *um*, like Nubes. To which may be added, Cor, Cos, Os, Lar, Bes, Nox, Vas, Mas, Mus, Sal, Lis, As, Nix. Parens, Pater, Mater, Frater, Canis, Panis, Hyems, &c. have Genitive plural *um*.

8. Proper Names in *e*; and Far, Hepar, Jubar, Gaultheria, Nectar, Laquear, make their Ab. in *e*.

9. When the Genitive plural ends in *ium*, the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative, have sometimes *is*, instead of *us*; as, *Omneis Partes*, or *Omni Partes*; for *omnes Partes*.

10. Nouns ending in *a* of the third Declension have oft frequently the Dative and Ablative plural in *atis*; Poema, Dat. *and* Ab. *Poematis*, or *Poematibus*.

11. Some of the fourth Declension make the Dative and Ablative plural in *ibus*; as, *Arcus*, *Partus*, *Ficus*, *Quercus*, *Specus*, *Tribus*, *Lacus*. But *Artus*, *cræstus*, *Portus*, *Genu* and *Veru*, have *ibus* and *abus*.

12. The Genitive plural of the first four Declensions is sometimes contracted, especially by the Poets; as, *Coelicolûm*, *Deûm*, *Mensûm*, *Currûm*, for *Coelicularum*, *Deorum*, *Mentium*, *Curruum*.

13. When a Noun is compounded with another Noun, they be both in the Nominative, they are declined as if they were not compounded; as, *Nom. Respublica*, *Gen. Reipublicæ*. But if the Nominative be compounded with an oblique Case, then only the Nominative is declined; as, *Nom. Paterfamiliâs*, *Gen. Patrisfamiliâs*, *Gen. Patrifamiliâs*, &c. *Nom. Jurisconsultus*, *Gen. Jurisconsulti*, *Dat. Jurisconsulto*, &c.

14. Most Nouns of the fifth Declension want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural, and except *Res*, *Acies*, *Fides*, *Species*, *Dies*, they commonly want plural altogether.

GENDER.] Gender or Kind properly refers to the distinction of Sex, or the Difference there is between Males and Females in Animals, from which their Names are ranked under two Kinds, viz. the He-Kind, and the She-Kind; as, a Father, a Son, a Bull; a Mother, a Daughter, a Cow, clearly shew.

But though Sex thus properly belongs to Animals, yet by Allusion to this, it is customary to speak of some other things as *He*s and *She*s: Thus we apply *He* to the Sun, *She* to the Moon, Ships, &c.

All Nouns in Latin are divided according to their Genders, and as they are of *this* or *that* Gender, they require





*Regia, eris*, a Woman ; *Puella, æ*, a Girl ; *Regia, æ*, a Queen ; *Maria, æ*, Mary.

*Note.* Proper Names have much of the Nature of Adjectives in them, being given to particular Persons, Places, &c. on Account of some of their distinguishing Properties ; and therefore they are commonly of the same Gender with the general Name of that Sort to which they belong. Hence,  
3. The Names of Months, Winds, Rivers, Mountains, are masculine, from *Mensis*, a Month ; *ventus*, the Wind ; *Fluvius*, a River ; *Mons*, a Mountain.

4. The Names of particular Ships, Jewels, Countries, Islands, Cities, Poems, Trees, are commonly feminine, from *Navis*, a Ship ; *Gemma*, a Jewel ; *Insula*, an Island ; *Urbs*, a City, &c.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

1. But Towns in *i* and *e* are masculine.  
2. *TIBUR*, *PRÆNESTE*, and such as end in *um* are Neuters, from the common *OPPIDUM*, a Town.  
3. Males are Trees that end in *fer*,  
Neuters in *ur*, and likewise *er*.

Secondly. The Gender of such Nouns as cannot be known by their Signification according to the foregoing Rules, may be discovered by their Ending.

Nouns ending in *on*, *um*, and *a* ; and Nouns declined, are Neuters ; as, *Bellum, i*, War ; *Cornu, a* Horn.

1. DEC. Nouns of the first Declension end in *a*, and are feminine ; except these Males, *Adria, Panthea, Planeta, Cometa*.

2. DEC. Nouns of the second Declension ending in *er, ir, ur, us* and *os*, are masculine ; as, *Annus, i*.

1. But

1. But there are three or four Neuters ; as, *Chlorus*, *Virus*, *Pelagus*, *Vulgus*.

2. There are several in *-us*, which are derived from Greek Nouns, which are feminine ;

*Abyffus*, *Domus*, *Humus*, *Periodus*,  
*Diphthongus*, *Chryftallus*, *Methodus*, *Synodus*, &c.

3. DEC. 1. Nouns of the third Declenfion ending in *-er*, *-or*, *-os*, and *-o*, are mafculine ; as *Ætheris*, the Sky ; *Color*, *-oris*, Colour ; *Sermo*, Speech.

2. But Verbals ending in *-io* ; and Nouns in *-io* and *-go* increafing fhort in *-inis*, are Feminine ; *Lectio*, *-onis*, a Lesson, &c.

EXCEPTIONS from thefe two RULES.

1. Ordo is male, but female *Cos*, and *Dos*.

As alfo *Caro*, *Arbor*, and *Arbos*.

2. But *Æquor*, *Marmor*, and *Ador* :

As alfo *Lafer*, *Iter*, *Cor*,

With *Piper*, *Gingiber*, and *Uber*,

Are Neuters ; and fo is *Verber*, *Tuber* ;

With *Cicer*, *Sifer*, and *Papaver*,

*Ver*, *Laver*, *Spinther*, and *Cadaver*.

Put *Os* is neuter, 'tis all one,

Whether 'tis put for Mouth or Bone.

3. Nouns of the third Declenfion in *-as*, *-aus*, *-is*, *-x*, and *-s* with a Confonant before it, are feminine ; as, *Felicitas*, *-atis*, Happinefs ; *Laus*, *-dis*, Praise ; *Sedes*, *-is*, a Seat ; *Lis*, *-itis*, Strife ; *Radix*, *-icis*, Root ; *Ars*, *-tis*, Art.

Put Neuter *Æs*, fo alfo *Vas*,

As and *Adamas* for Male muft pafs ;

So *Gurges* and *Poples*, and *Paries*, a Wall,

With *Limes* and *Fomes*, and *Termes* call ;

Lebe

ebes, Tapes; add to these,  
 almes, Trames, Cefpes, Pes,  
 tipes, Antes, Magnes, Bes,  
 ] But Caffis, Fuffis, Vermis, Enfis,  
 ectis, Poftis, Fascis, Menfis,  
 orris, Callis, Lapis, Follis,  
 axis, Orbis, Collis, Pollis :  
 compounds from *As*, to wit Centuffis,  
 or Nummus Sake, and fo Decuffis,  
 lis, Cucumis, and Vomis, Unguis,  
 re Males, with Vepris Sentis, Sanguis,  
 and Panis, Piscis, Callis, Ignis.  
 and .s.] Dens, Seps, Grex, Nefrens, Phœnix, Fons,  
 erope, Scobs, Rudens, Fornix, Mons,  
 ydrops, Gryps, Natrix, Coccyx, Pons,  
 alix, and Calyx, Chalybs, Varix,  
 ex, Diffylables, and orix,  
 With Spadix, Urpix, Bombix, Bidens,  
 and Torrens, Continens, and Tridens.  
 o Profluens, Oriens, Occidens,  
 odrans, and others of like Sense ;  
 Namely, all other Parts of *As*,  
 for Males among good Authors pafs.

4. Nouns of the third Declension ending in *a*,  
*t*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, *us*, are Neuters. But  
 uns in *us* encreasing long in the Genitive, as  
*us*, *utis*; Virtue, are Feminine.

[except] For Male, Sal, Sol, and Mugil go,  
 alar the Fish is Male, and fo  
 ur Vultur, Furfur, Turtur too,  
 Mus, Lepus, Delphin, Peften, join  
 Ren, Splen. But Pecus Feminine.

4. DEC. Nouns of the fourth Declension end-  
 in *us*, are Masculine.

But Female Ficus, Acus, Domus, Tribus,  
 With Manus, Porticus, and Idus.



5. Dec. Nouns of the fifth Declension are nine ; except Meridies, m. and Dies, which is doubtful Gender sing. and m. plural.

Commons are excepted from all these Rules,

Such Nouns, as agree to both Sexes, are to be of the *Common Gender* ; and are male or feminine, according as they are applied, *Conjux*, m. a Husband ; *Conjux*, f. a Wife.

Such as these :

Parens, Infans, Hæres, Homo,  
Conviva, Dux, and Autor, Nemo,  
Interpres, Canis, Civis, Hostis,  
Sodalis, Vindex, Vates, Testis,  
With Exul, Advena, Sacerdos,  
Sus, Adolescens, Martyr, Custos ;  
Add Judex, Obses, Comes, Bos ; Bovis,  
Plur : Boum D. and Ab. Bobus vel Bubus.

Doubtfuls are also excepted from the foregoing Rules. Nouns, which in good Authors are sometimes of one Gender and sometimes of another, said to be of the doubtful Gender.

Such are these that follow :

Barbitus, Balanus, Camelus,  
With Colus, Rubus, and Phaselus,  
Penus and Specus you will see

In one or other of all three.

These Torquis, Retis, Annis, Clunis,  
Corbis too, and Pulvis, Fumis ;

So likewise Anguis, and Canalis,  
Are doubtfuls, Funis rather male is ;

But note that Pulvis you'll scarce find,  
Or Annis of the female Kind.

Lynx, Calx, Strips, Imbrex, Perdix, all  
Scrobs, Adeps, female are or male ;

But of the two Lynx female rather,  
And Adeps, all the rest are either.

are to these add Obex, Cinis, Linter, Cardo,  
 nis, and Pumex, Cortex, Forceps, Margo.

### IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Regular Nouns, called Heteroclites, vary from the  
 mon Custom of the Language, according to which  
 general Rules of Grammar are formed. These Irre-  
 gularities respect the Number, Case, Declension, and  
 Order of Nouns.

NUMBER.] There is very little Irregularity in Nouns  
 Number. For when any Thing can be conceived  
 as one Individual, it is the common Custom of all  
 Languages to use its Name only in the singular Num-

And on the contrary, such Things as are always  
 eived to be more than one in some Respect or other,  
 be mentioned only in the plural Number; as, Scissars,  
 ows, Thanks.

he Idiom peculiar to any particular Language com-  
 ly adds some other Words. Such in Latin are In-  
 e, Excubiæ, Cunæ, Divitiæ, Nuptiæ, &c. which  
 t the singular. All such may be called defective,  
 use they want one of the Numbers, but they are  
 irregular.

he Names of some Cities, which should seem to be  
 ular in Nature, are notwithstanding used in the plural  
 ; as, Athenæ, *arum*, Athens; Hierosolyma *orum*,  
 salem: But this Manner of naming them probably  
 e from such Cities consisting originally of two distinct  
 s or Towns, which in Process of Time became  
 ed together.

ASE.] There are many Nouns called Aptotes, which  
 not declined, the Word itself answering for all the  
 es; as, Fas, Right; Nil, Nihil, Nothing; Gummi,  
 n, Tot, so many; Quot, how many, &c. Cardinal  
 ns of Number, from three to an hundred, are not  
 ined.

ome are called Monoptotes, that is, used only in one  
 e; as, Noctu, Jussu in the Ab. singular; Inficias,  
 he Acc. plural.

Diptotes are such as are used chiefly in two Cases, as, *Fors*, *Forte*; *Spontis*, *Sponte*; *Tantundem*, *Tantum*, &c.

Some are seldom used but in three Cases; as, *Opem*, *Ope*; *Precis*, *Precem*, *Prece*, &c.

DECLENSIONS.] Some Things have two or three Names differing a little in their Termination; as, *Arbor*, *Arbos*, a Tree; *Vomis* and *Vomer*, a Plough-share; *Delphin* and *Delphinus*, a Dolphin; *Gibbus* and *Gibbus*, a Bunch on the Back.

It often happened that one of these Names, thro' the Change of the Language, or Custom, became more fashionable, while the other Name was but little used, unless in a particular Number, Gender, or Declension. Now the remaining Parts of these several Names of the same Thing, which were originally, when in Use, of different Declensions and Genders, being all referred to the same Name, make it seem to be of different Genders and Declensions. Thus *Pergamus* and *Supellus* are feminine sing. neut. plur. And *Rastrum*, *Frænum*, *Filum*, are neut. sing. and masc. and neut. plur. *Argos*, the Name of a City, and *Cælum*, Heaven, are neut. sing. and masc. plur.

Some are masc. sing. neut. plur. as, *Mænalus*, *Imanus*, &c. And some as, *Jocus* and *Locus*, are masc. sing. and masc. and neut. plur.

### The DECLENSIONS of GREEK N O U N S.

**S**UCH as end in *as*, *es*, and *e*, are of the first Declension, and are thus declined:

N. <i>Æneas</i> ,	N. <i>Anchises</i> , e,	N. <i>Penelope</i> ,
G. <i>Æneæ</i> ,	G. <i>Anchisæ</i> ,	G. <i>Penelopes</i> ,
D. <i>Æneæ</i> ,	D. <i>Anchisæ</i> ,	D. <i>Penelopes</i> ,
A. <i>Ænean</i> , or <i>am</i> ,	A. <i>Anchisen</i> or <i>em</i> ,	A. <i>Penelopen</i> , or <i>e</i> ,
V. <i>Æneas</i> , <i>Ænea</i> ,	V. <i>Anchises</i> , e,	V. <i>Penelope</i> ,
A. <i>Ænea</i> :	A. <i>Anchise</i> , or <i>sa</i> .	A. <i>Penelope</i> .

Such as end in *os*, *on*, and *eus*, are of the second Declension, and are thus declined:



long, thus;	In <i>or</i> short, thus;	In <i>on</i> , thus;
N. Delos,	N. Athos,	N. Ilion, <i>or</i> Ilium,
Deli,	G. Atho,	G. Ilii,
Delo,	D. Atho,	D. Ilio,
Delum, Delon,	A. Athon, Atho,	A. Ilion, Ilium,
Dele,	V. Athos,	V. Ilion, Ilium,
Delo:	A. Atho:	A. Ilio.
Orpheus	D. Orphii, ei, eo,	V. Orpheu,
Orphii, ei, eos:	A. Orpheum, on, a:	A. Orpheo.

Greek Nouns of the third Declension, which increase their Gen. with *d*, and such as increase in *or* pure, that with a Vowel before it, have their Gen. frequently *or*; as, Arcas, Arcadis vel Arcados, an Arcadian; Hæfesis, eos, vel ios. To these add Sphynchos, Strymon, and Panos, in the Gen. from Sphynx, Strymon, &c.

Those that increase their Gen. in *is*, or *or*, with a Consonant before it, have frequently their Acc. sing. in *a*, and plur. in *as*; as, Lampas, Lampadis, Lampada, Lampas.

Words in *is* or *ys*, whose Gen. ends in *or* pure, have their Acc. in *im* or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as, Hæfesis, -eos, Hæfism, or -in; Chelys, -yos, a Lute, Chelym or -yn.

Masculines of Words in *is*, which have the Gen. in *dis* or *os*, have their Acc. for the most Part in *im* or *in*; seldom in *dem*, or in *da*; as, Paris, Parim vel Parin, vel Paridem: Feminines have most commonly *dem* or *aa*, and seldom *im* or *in*; as, Briseis, Briseidem vel Briseida.

Feminines in *o*, have *us* in their Gen. and *o* in their other Cases; as, Dido, Didus, Dido, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form, Didonis, Didoni, &c. which Juno (as being of a Latin Original) always follows.

Greek Nouns in *s* lose it in the Voc. and commonly *esum*, and seldom *on* in the Gen. plur. Jesus makes Acc. Jesum, in all other Cases Jesu.

## H. ADJECTIVES

**A**DJECTIVES of three Endings, have the in *er*, or in *us*, of the masc. Gender; and the Endings are always declined like Puer and Annus; second Ending is always in *a* of the fem. Gender; declined like Penna; the third Ending is always in *um* of the neuter; and declined like Bellum: which is marked for the sake of Learners in the following Examples, *m. f. n.* masculine, feminine, Neuter.

<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
N. Tener, era, erum,	N. Teneri, æ, a,		N. Teneri, æ, a,		
G. Teneri, æ, i,	G. Tenerorum, arum, orum,		G. Tenerorum, arum, orum,		
D. Tenero, æ, o,	D. Teneris, is, is,		D. Teneris, is, is,		
A. Tenerum, eram, erum,	Acc. Teneros, as, a,		Acc. Teneros, as, a,		
V. Tener, era, erum,	V. Teneri, æ, a,		V. Teneri, æ, a,		
Ab. Tenero, a, o:	Ab. Teneris, is, is,		Ab. Teneris, is, is,		
So Pulcher, chra, um,	fair. Liber, era, um,		fair. Liber, era, um,		
N. Bonus, a, um,	N. Boni, æ, a,		N. Boni, æ, a,		
G. Boni, æ, i,	G. Bonorum, arum, orum,		G. Bonorum, arum, orum,		
D. Bono, æ, o,	D. Bonis, is, is,		D. Bonis, is, is,		
Acc. Bonum, am, um,	Acc. Bonos, as, a,		Acc. Bonos, as, a,		
V. Bone, a, um,	V. Boni, æ, a,		V. Boni, æ, a,		
Ab. Bono, a, o:	Ab. Bonis, is, is,		Ab. Bonis, is, is,		

All Adjectives in *us* (except Vetus, eris, old) are declined like bonus, good.

Also these Adjectives, Ullus, Nullus, Alius, Alius, Uter, Neuter, which have no Vocatives; and Solus, Totus, Unus; except that they make commonly in the Gen. sing. and in the Dat. Alius has Aliud in the Neuter, in the Gen. Alius, not Alius; as, N. Ullus, *um*, C. Ullius, D. Ulli, &c. Unus one, can have plur. only when it is joined with a Word which has sing.

Ambo both, and Duo two, are thus declined:

Plur. N. & V. Ambo, ambæ, ambo,
G. Ambozum, arum, orum,
Acc. Ambos, o, as, Ambo,
D. & Ab. Ambobus, ambabus, ambohus.

Adjectives in *is*, are of two Endings, and are declined like Substantives of the third Declension thus :

& f. n.		m. & f. n.	
Mollis, e, soft.	N. Molles, ia,	Tristis, e, sad.	
Mollis,	Mollum,	Levis, e, light.	
Molli,	Mollibus,	Dulcis, e, sweet.	
Mollem, e,	Acc. Molles, ia,	Mitis, e, mild.	
Mollis, e,	V. Molles, ia,	Turpis, e, base.	
Molli:	Ab. Mollibus.	Brevis, e, short.	

Comparatives are thus declined.

m. & f. n.		m. & f. n.	
Durior, Durius,		N. Duriores, a,	
Durioris,		G. Duriorum,	
Duriori,		D. Durioribus,	
Acc. Duriores, durius,		Acc. Duriores, a,	
Durior, Durius,		V. Duriores, a,	
Ab. Duriores, or duriori:		Ab. Durioribus.	

Note. There are some Adjectives in *er* which have also declined like Mollis of the third Declension, except Nom. and Voc. singular, thus;

m. & f. n.		m. & f. n.	
N. & V. Acer,	cris,	acre,	
G. Acris, &c.	So		
Campester, Volucer, celebr, celer, saluber,			
Sylvester, alacer, paluster, pedester, equester.			

3. Adjectives of one Ending are declined like Substantives of the third Declension, thus;

m. f. & n.		m. f. & n.	
N. Felix, happy,		N. Felices, ia,	
G. Felicis,		G. Felicium,	
D. Felici,		D. Felicibus,	
Acc. Felicem, felix,		Acc. Felices, ia,	
V. Felix,		V. Felices, ia,	
Ab. Felice, or i:*		Ab. Felicibus.	

\* The Ab. in *i* is much more used than in *e*, especially in the Ab. absolute.

Participles of the present Tense are thus declined; Adjectives ending in *as*, *er*, *ar*, and *i*, with a Consonant before it; as, Arpinas, dives, trux, prudens, par.

Pauper



Pauper, dives, memor, locuples, reses, hebes, praeterea, deses, &c. Compounds in ceps, fex, and com have seldom the Neuter, and form the Genitive plural mostly in *um*.

Though Adjectives have no Genders, yet when the Adjective in any Case hath but one Ending, it may be applied to a Substantive of any Gender: Where it hath two Endings, the first is either Masculine or Feminine, and the second is Neuter: Where it hath three Endings, the first is Masculine, the second Feminine, and the third Neuter.

### COMPARISON of Adjectives.

As Adjectives signify the Qualities or Properties of Things, their Signification may be increased or diminished, to a third Degree; as one Thing may be hard, and yet more hard; another most hard.

Hence there are reckoned three Degrees of Comparison, the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Positive denotes a Thing to be merely such, as *Mollis*, soft; and expresses no Comparison of one Thing with another.

The Comparative denotes one Thing to be *MORE* such than another with which it is compared; as, *mollis Lana*, softer Wool. And it is formed of the first Case of its Positive in *i*, by adding *or*, for the Masculine and Feminine, and *us* for the Neuter; as, of *Mollis*, *Dur*, *Molli*, is formed *Mollior*, and *Molli-us*, softer.

The Superlative denotes a Thing to be *SUCH* in the highest Degree possible; as, *Mollissima Lana*, the softest Wool. It is also formed of the first Case of its Positive in *i* by adding */* and *simus*; as, *Gen. Duri*, *Duri-ssimus*.

1. *Note*, That in English, the Comparative Degree is usually formed by adding *er* to the Positive, or setting the Word *MORE* before it; as, hard, harder, or more hard: The Superlative by adding *est* to the Positive, or by the Word *MOST* before it; as, hard, hardest, or most hard: And *VERY* before an Adjective, is usually made by the Superlative in Latin.

2. Monosyllables for the most part, are compared

and *est*; and Dissyllables by *more* and *most*; as, mild, milder, mildest; frugal, more frugal, most frugal. Dissyllables ending in *y*; as, happy, lovely; and in *le* after Mute; as, able, ample; or accented on the last syllable; as, discrete, polite; easily admit of *er* and *est*. Words of more than two Syllables are compared with *more* and *most*, especially when it would be difficult to pronounce them with *er* and *est*; as, righteous, more righteous, most righteous.---It is very improper to use these Ways at once; as, more whiter, most whitest.

The Termination *is* seems a Sort of Comparative; diminishing the Signification a little below the Positive, as, blackish, a little black; and such Words admit no other Comparison.

4. The Hebrews often made their Superlative by the Name of God; and by the Genitive plural joined with the Nouns singular; or a Noun of a near Signification to the Genitive; and from them we have derived such Phrases as, the Mountains of God, for the very high Mountains; Vanity of Vanities, for the greatest Vanity; Thickness of Darkness, for the greatest Darkness. And also from the French who form their Superlatives by the Word *trice*, we sometimes say, thrice happy, &c.

5. If the Positive in Latin end in *er*, the Comparative is regular, but the Superlative is formed by adding *us* to the Nominative; as, pulcher, pulchertimus.

6. Humilis, similis, facilis, gracilis, have their Comparative regular, but form their Superlative by changing *is* into *imus*; as, similis, (similior) simillimus.

7. Adjectives derived of *Dico*, *velo*, *facio*, *loquor*, change into *entior* and *entissimus*; as, Maledicus, benevolus, beneficus, magniloquus, entior, entissimus.

These are thus compared,

Optimus,	Melior,	Plus N.	Good, better, best,
Pessimus,	Pejor,	Plus N.	Bad, ill, evil, worse, worst,
Maximus,	Magnus, Major,	Plus N.	Great, greater, greatest,
Minimus,	Minor,	Plus N.	Little, less, least,
Plurimus,	Multus,	Plus N.	Much or many, more, most.
	Vetus,		

Vetus,	veterior,	veterimus.
Superus,	superior,	supremus, or summus.
Inferus,	inferior,	infimus, or imus.
Posterus,	posterior,	postremus, or posthumus.
Nequam,	nequior,	nequissimus.
Exterus,	exterior,	extremus, or extremus.
Citra,	citerior,	citimus.
Intra,	interior,	intimus.
Ultra,	ulterior,	ultimus.
Prius,	prior,	primus.
Prope,	propior,	proximus.
Diu,	diutior,	diutissimus.

9. If a Vowel comes before *us*, as in Arduus, Comparative is made by adding *magis*: And the Superlative, in sundry Adjectives as well as these, by setting before them, *Maxime*, or *valde*, *admodum*, *apprime*, *perquam*, *mire*, *insigniter*; as, Arduus, Difficult, *maxime* Arduus, most difficult. *Apprime utilis*, very useful. Sometimes *per* and *pro*, Composition denote the Superlative; as, *Pergratus*, very agreeable; *Pægravis*, very heavy.

*Obs.* I. These are DEFECTIVE in Comparison. Principles in *du* and *rus*, and Adjectives in *bundus*, *imius*, *ivus*, *orus*; and these,

*Magnanimus*, *mirus*, *claudus*, *salvus*, *memor*, *almus*, *Delirus*, *rudis*, *vulgaris*, *calvus*, *egenus*.

2. Some seem to want the Positive; as, *Ucior*, *ocius*; *deterior*, *deterimus*.

3. Some want the Comparative; as, *Bellus*, *consultus*, *diversus*, *invictus*, *invitus*, *inclytus*, *meritus*, *novus*, *falsus*, *fidus*-issimus. *Sacer*, *sacerrimus*; *Nuper*, *nuperimus*. Somiddle, middlemost, very, veryest, in English.

4. Some want the Superlative; as, *Adolescens*, *comunis*, *dexter*, *sinister*, *longinquus*, *declivis*, *taciturnus*, *opimus*-ior, *Juvenis*, *Junior*; *Senex*, *Senior*, *Ante*, *anterior*.

5. Some are Comparative only; as, *Anterior*, *lior*, *sequior*; and these from Substantives, *Neron*, *Panior*, &c.



Such as these, *Assiduus, strenuus, egregius*,  
*mus*, sometimes, but rarely occur.  
 Syllables in English are seldom compared, if they  
 terminate in *some, ful, ing, one, less, ed, id, al, ent, ain,*  
*ly, ty, my, ny, py, ry*; as, *fullsome, trifling, &c.* Yet  
 of these often take *very* before them; as, *very trou-*  
*some, very careful.* And *lucky, and happy*, are com-

fine all Adjectives, which do not admit any Increase  
 their Signification, cannot be compared; as, *one,*  
*all, every, &c.*  
 nouns whether Substantives or Adjectives, are divided  
 Grammarians into Primitives and Derivatives. A  
 primitive Noun is that which comes from no other: A  
 derivative is one that comes from another. With respect  
 derivatives, some are called  
 Patronymicks. These are Substantives derived from  
 proper Names, and signify one's Pedigree; as, *Æacides,*  
*Son, or Grandson*, and sometimes, one of the Posterity  
*Æacus.* Masculines mostly end in *us*; Femines in  
*a, or æ.*

Gentiles or Patrials, which are Adjectives derived  
 from the proper Names of Countries, Cities, &c. as,  
*Africanus, Romanus, an American, a Roman.*

Possessives, are Adjectives derived from Substan-  
 tives, and signify Possession or Property; as, *Paternus,*  
*manus, of, or belonging to, a Father, a Man.*

Diminutives, are Substantives or Adjectives derived  
 from others, which denote that the Signification of the  
 primitive Word is lessened; as, *Libellus, a little Book,*  
*albidulus, whitish; from Liber, candidus.* They are  
 formed in English by the Termination *ling*; as,  
*duckling.*

Verbals, which are Substantives or Adjectives deriv-  
 ed from Verbs; as, *Amor, Love, amabilis, lovely; from*  
*amare, to love; Lectio, a Lesson; from lego, lectum, to*

Substantives ending in *dom, tic, ship, wic*, commonly  
 denote Office, Employment, or Condition; as, *Freedom,*  
*proprietorship, Stewardship, Guardianship, Bailiwick.*

Nouns in *hood* or *head*, signify the State, Condition, Quality; as, Godhead, Manhood, Widowhood.

Substantives, which end in *ness*, are commonly derived from Adjectives, and signify the Quality in general with those Adjectives, without referring to any particular Subject in which it actually exists; as, Goodness from good; Bonitas, from bonus. Many Words which have other Endings are used in this Sense; as, Freedom from free; Libertas, from liber.

These are called abstract and concrete Terms: the former are sometimes used for the latter, especially in the Bible according to the Idiom of the original Languages, and thus form the superlative Degree; Israel *was* Holiness to the Lord: The carnal Mind *is* Enmity against God.

Adjectives in *ful*, *some*, *y*, commonly signify Plenty, Abundance; as, wealthy, joyful, cumbersome. But those which end in *less*; or have *un*, *in*, or *im*, prefixed, signify Privation or Want; as, careless, unpleasant, innocent, i. e. not hurtful, impatient.

To these may be added such Words as begin with *dis* and *mis*, which Particles are derived from the French. *Dis* imports contrariety, and answers to the Latin Preposition *de*. *Mis* insinuates some Error; as, Mistake, mismanage; and it may be rendered by the Latin Word *male*, or *perperam*.

Persons may ordinarily know when a Word is derived from the Latin, and how it may be made Latin again, by the following Rules.

1. Most English Words Ending in *ness* or *ty*, are derived from the Latin Words in *tia*; as, Temperantia, Clemencia, Temperance, Clemency.

2. Words Ending in *ion* in English, are made Latin by casting away *n*; as, Question, Questio; Religion, Religio.

3. Words Ending in *ty* are made Latin by changing into *tas*; as, Liberty, Libertas; Charity, Charitas.

4. Words Ending in *ude* are derived from the Latin by changing *o* into *e*; Fortitude, Fortitudo; Gratitude, Gratitude, &c.

5. Adjectives

Adjectives which end in *a*, do for the most Part become Latin by the Addition of *us*; as, rigid, rigidus; putrid, putridus, &c.

Words Ending in *s*, *n*, or *r*, between two Vowels, become Latin by changing the last Vowel into *us*; as, murtus; obscure, obscurus, &c.

Most Words Ending in *us*, are made Latin by changing them into *us*; as, latent, latens; vigilant, vigilans, &c.

Many Words Ending in *a*, by the Addition of *us* become Latin, as, liberal, liberalis; substantial; substantialis.

**PRONOUN**, the second Part of Speech.

THE frequent Repetition of the same Words is disagreeable to the Ear, and would render Language slow when the same Things are often mentioned. Inconveniency is avoided by using certain Words to supply the Place of Nouns, which Words are called Pronouns; thus, As the Man *who* is truly religious, fears God: As the Man, *which* Man is truly religious, Man fears God. Hence,

A **PRONOUN** is a Word used instead of a Noun, and has Person, Number, Case, and Gender.

There are three Persons which may be the Subject of any Discourse: First, the Person, who speaks, I speak of himself; secondly, he may speak of another Person, to whom he addresses himself; thirdly, he may speak of some other Person.

These Persons are called, respectively, the first, second, and third Persons; and expressed by the Pronouns, Ego, I; Tu, Thou; Ille, He: and finally, Nos, We; Vos, Ye; Illi, They.

NOTE. It is Customary in English to use the plural Number You (but not Ye) when we speak only to one particular Person; unless in Contempt, or in Prayer to God; and the Verb to which You is joined is also plural; as, You love, not youlovest.



2. All Nouns and Pronouns, which one cannot upon, or address himself to, want the Vocative Case. Pronouns are of the same Gender with the Noun which they stand, or with which they agree.

Thus all personal Pronouns, as, *Ego, tu, is, ille,* &c. are like Substantives standing by themselves; they vary their Gender, according as the Noun to which they stand or refer to is of this, or that Gender; as Tu you, O Man, masculine: Tu Puella, you, O Girl, feminine. Libereius, his or her Book.

Pronouns declined,

Singular.

N. Ego, I,

G. Mei, of me, mine,

D. Mihi, to, or for me,

Acc. Me, me,

Ab. Me, with, from, or by me,

Plural.

N. Nos, we,

G. Nostrium, or Nostri, of us, our's,

D. Nobis, to, or for us,

Acc. Nos, us,

Ab. Nobis, with, from, or by us.

Singular.

N. Tu, Thou, or You,

G. Tui, of Thee, of You, Thine,

D. Tibi, to, or for Thee, You,

Acc. Te, Thee, You,

V. Tu, O Thou, or You,

Ab. Te, with, from, or by Thee, You,

Plural.

N. Vos, You, Ye,

G. Vestrum, or Vestri, of You, Your's,

D. Vobis, to, or for You,

Acc. Vos, You,

V. Vos, O You, or Ye,

Ab. Vobis, with, from, or by You.

Note. Our's and Your's are used for the Genitive, the Noun to which they belong is understood.

is that? Your's, *that is*, the Book of You. So also  
*stems*, singular; otherwise the Genitive may be  
 made by *of*; as, the Fear *of* *it*, and the Dread *of*  
*, &c.*

### Singular and Plural.

—Himself, herself; themselves.

Sui, of himself, herself; of themselves; his, her, their.

Sibi, to, or for himself, herself; themselves; him,

Se, himself, herself, themselves. (her, &c.

Se, with, &c. himself, herself; themselves.

*Note.* Sui may be englobed by him, her, and them,

where it is not used reciprocally; and where there is

particular Emphasis. Himself and themselves, thro'

custom, are used in the Nominative, tho' they seem to

properly the Accusative, perhaps for *my* self, *their*

ives. Himself and herself, are most commonly changed

to his, her, their, his own, her own, their own, in

the Genitive and Dative.

Pronouns, that are not personal, are in some Respects

adjectives, because they cannot stand by themselves,

but are joined with, or relate to Substantives.

### Singular.

### Plural.

Hic, hæc, hoc, This, N. Hi, hæ, hæc, These,

Hujus, hujus, hujus, G. Horum, harum, horum,

Huic, huic, huic, D. His, his, his,

Acc. Hunc, hanc, hoc, Acc. Hos, has, hæc,

Ab. Hoc, hæc, hoc: Ab. His, his, his.

### Singular.

Ille, illa, illud, He, she, it, — that

Illius, illius, illius, His, her, her's, its, of it — that

Illi, illi, illi, to or for him, her, it — that

Acc. Illum, illam, illud, Him, her, it — that

Ab. Illo, illa, illo: with him, her, it — that.

### Plural.

N. Illi, illæ, illa, They — those (those

G. Illorum, illarum, illorum, of them, their, their's —

D. Illis, illis, illis, to or for them — those

Acc. Illos, illas, illa, them — those

Ab. Illis, illis, illis. with them — those.

*Note.*

*Note.* Her's and their's are used when their Nouns are understood, as has been observed of Our's and Your's.

2. Ille, Iste, and Is, coming immediately before a Substantive expressed or understood, and joined with it, are englished by that; as, Ille Vir, that Man; Iste Villulus, that Villian.

3. This, that, other, any, some, one, none, in English may be reckoned a Sort of pronominal Adjectives, and are called Definitive, because, like the Article, they define and limit the Extent of the common Name or general Term, to which they either refer or are joined. This and That are varied to express Numbers, These, Those, but not to express Gender or Case. Other is not used plurally, only when it's Substantive is not joined to it, but referred to, or understood.

4. When *That* can be changed into who, whom, which, it is a Relative Pronoun; when it is not used as a Definite, nor as a Relative, it is a Conjunction. It seems to be redundant, or superfluous after some Conjunctions; as, after that, because that, lest that, &c.

Iste, ista, istud: He, she, it, that. Ipse, ea, ipsum, himself, she herself, itself, are declined like Ille, only Ipse hath ipsum in the N. Acc. V. sing. neut.

N. Is, ea, id, He, she, it, that,

G. Ejus, ejus, ejus, His, &c.

D. Ei, ei, ei,

Acc. Eum, eam, id,

Ab. Eo, ea, eo:

N. Ille, ea, ea.

G. Eorum, earum, eorum

D. Iis, or eis.

Acc. Eos, eas, ea.

Ab. Iis, or eis.

N. Qui, quæ, quod,

G. Cujus, cujus, cujus,

D. Cui, cui, cui,

Acc. Quem, quam, quod, Whom, which.

Ab. Quo, qua, quo, or qui: With whom or which.

Who, which, that.

Whose, of whom, of which

to or for whom, which.

Singular.

Plural.

N. Qui, quæ, quæ,

G. Quorum, quarum, quorum,

D. Quibus, or quæis,

Acc. Quos, quas, quæ,

Ab. Quibus, or quæis.

Who, which, that,

Whose, &c.

*Note.* Qui in the Ab. sing. is of all Genders.

2. Who



*Who* and *whom* refer to Persons, and which to things; as, The Book which you gave me, I returned. the Boy whom you sent, &c. But *what* refers to things.

*quis, quæ, quod.* or *quid*, Who, which, what, is used in asking Questions, and therefore called an Interrogative; it is declined like *Qui*; and *qui* is sometimes, rarely used for *quis*.

These five *Meus*, my or mine; *Tuus*, thy or thine, *Suus*, his own, her own, its own; *Noster*, our; *Vester*, your; are called Possessives, because they are commonly used to signify one's Property or Possession; as, My Book, is the Book belonging to me; Your Book is the Book belonging to you. They are declined like Adjectives of three Endings, only *Meus* has *mi, mea, meum* the Voc. sing.

*Mine*, *thine*, *her's*, *our's*, *your's*, *their's*, are to be used when the Substantive is left out or understood; *my*, *thy*, *her*, *our*, *your*, *their*, are used when the Substantive is inserted; as, This is my House; This is my Book.

Also when the Substantive preceding is separated by a Verb; as, These are our Books: These Books are ours. Our Children excel ours in Stature; but our's surpass theirs in Learning.

*Our's*, *your's*, *her's*, *their's*, notwithstanding their singular plural Termination, are applied equally to singular and plural Nouns; as, This Book is our's: These Books are our's.

*Mine*, *thine*, *his*, *her's*, *ours*, *your's*, *their's*, are often put in the Genitive with *of* before them when they follow a Substantive; as, This Island of our's; No Fault of their's. *Mine* and *thine* are often used instead of *my* and *thy*, when the Noun following them begins with a Vowel:—*Own* is an Adjective, perhaps a Participle from the obsolete Verb to owe; to possess; to be the right owner of a Thing.

PRONOUNS are further distributed into the following classes.

1. *Ego*,

1. *Ego, tu, sui, ille, iste, hic, and is*, are called *Primitives*, because they are not derived from other; and *Demonstratives*, because they point out a Person or Thing not spoken of before.

Pronouns in general have a sort of relative Sense, because they necessarily refer to the Names of those Persons or Things whose Representatives or Substitutes they are or relate to. But,

2. *Ille, iste, hic, is, idem*, and especially *qui*, called *Relatives* by way of Eminence, because they all refer, in a more express Manner, to some Person or Thing mentioned before.

3. *Nostros, Vestros, and Quos, atis*, are called *Complutives*, because they denote a Relation to Countries, Nations, Societies, or Parties. They are declined like *Felix*: and both these and Possessives are called *Demonstratives*, because they are derived from the Genitive of their Primitives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, and vestri*.

*Sui* and *suus* have a different Use from *ille*, when relatively applied: For *sui* and *suus* relate to the Nominative of the Sentence; but *ille* to some other Person or Thing; as, *Cæsar Ariovistus dixit, non sese Gallis, Gallos sibi, Bellum intulisse*: Cæsar told Ariovistus, that the Gauls made War upon himself [Cæsar], not he upon the Gauls. Here *illum* and *illi* [for *sese sibi*] had either referred to Ariovistus or left it uncertain what had been meant.

This precise Relation of *sui* and *suus* to the Nominative, has given them the Name of reciprocal Pronouns. Though here also, where no Ambiguity may ensue, any other Relative may be used for the reciprocal; as, *omnes boni, quantum in ipsis* [for *se*] *sunt, Cæsarem interfecerunt*.

These four Pronouns, *Hic, Iste, Ille, is*, express Distance with this Difference. *Hic* is nearest to the Speaker, *Iste* next, and *Ille* furthest off, answering to *This, That, and the Other*: But *is* denotes a Person absent. Also *iste* shews Respect, *iste* Contempt; as, *Alexander ille magnus*, Alexander the Great; *Tarquinius iste superbus*, Tarquin the Proud.

Pronouns are often compounded, either with Nouns

liquis, of alius and quis; or with Propouns; as, quis, Isthic; or with Verbs; as, Quivis, Quilibet, with Adverbs; as, Quisquam, eccum, ellum; or Conjunctions; as, Siquis, Quisnam; or with the Syllabic Suffixes, Met, te, be, pre, cine, nam, dem, dam, quam, or cunque; as, Egomet, Tute, Quispiam,

**Compound and declined.**

**Nom.** Egomet. **G.** Meimet. **Acc.** and **Ab.** Memet. **Mihimet.** **Plur.** Nosmet, I myself; We ourselves. **Egoipse, Meiipsum;** &c. in all Cases: But more elegant Writers separate them, by putting ipse in the Nominative, when it may be the Nominative to the Verb, whatever Case the other Pronouns may be; as, Mi ipse placeo, I please myself. So tu ipse. Tute, tutemet, thou, thyself; Vosmet, ye yourselves.

**Sibimet, Semet,** him, her self. Sometimes ipse put after met; as, Egomet ipse, I my self.

**Hicce, hæcce, hocce, hujusce.** **Pl.** Hicce, this, &c. — **Hiccine, hæccine, hoccine.** **Acc.** huncce, hoccine, hoccine. **Ab.** hoccine, haccine, hoccine.

**Hæccine, This.** Ist-ic, or Isth-ic, &c, -ce, or Acc. -unc, -anc, -oc, or uc. **Ab.** -oc, -ac, oc. **Inter Pl.** &c, the self same. So illic, he.

**Idem, eadem, idem,** the same, is declined like, I, id, in all Cases; only m is changed into n; be- e dem; as, eundem, not eymdem.

**Eccē and I,** is compounded **Acc.** eccum, eccam, look here he, -she is **Pl.** eccos, eccas.

**Of En and Ille;** ellum, ellam, there he comes; ere the comes. **Pl.** ellas, ellas.

**Quidam, quædam, quoddam, or quiddam,** &c. me one. But it changes m before dam, into n; as, uendam, quorundam, &c.

**Quivis, quævis, quodvis, or quidvis,** &c. any.

**Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, or Quidlibet,** &c. who, which, or what you please.



Quis.

Quisquis.

Quicquid.

Acc. Quicquid. Ab.

Quoquo.

Quaqua.

Quoquo.

Yet in Authors we sometimes find the other both singular and plural.

Quisnam, quænam, quædam, or quidnam, &c. which, what.

Quisque, quæque, quodque, or quidque, &c. one, all.

Quotusquisque. D. quotocuique. Acc. quotumque, what one among many.

Quisquam, quæquam, quodquam, quidquam, or quam, &c. any. But Acc. quemquam: Yet quem is sometimes used.

Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam, quidpiam, or piam, &c. any.

Unusquisque, unaquæque, unumquodque, or que, &c. every one.

So unusquispiam, any one in particular.

Aliquis, aliqua, aliquod, or aliquid, &c. some, any.

Nunquid, nunqua, nunquod, or nunquid, &c. there any?

Siquis, siqua, siquod, or siquid, &c. if there be.

Nequis, neque, nequod, or nequid, &c. lest any.

But these are commonly read separately; as quis, Si qua, Si quod, or Si quid, &c.

Ecquis, ecqua, or ecquæ, ecquod, or ecquid, &c. whether any. These make Acc. Plur. Neut. in 4.

1st. Ipsemet, he himself.

MEUS. Meus, tuus, &c. Have sometimes the syllable Adjection præ, added in the Ablative; as, meæ of, or for my own; Tuæ, of thy own; Suæ, of his or their own; nostræ, of our own.

The syllabic Adjections præ, te, et, pro, cum, &c. to render the Signification of the Pronoun more ed and emphatical.

Of *modi*, a Manner, and *in hic ipse*, and *qui*, are compounded, these *Gentives*; *Quismodi*, of that Sort; *Quisimodi*, of this Sort; *Quisimodi*, of that Sort; *Quisimodi*, of which Sort or Kind: And sometimes with the Syllable *ce* in the Middle; as, *ejusmodi*, *jusmodi*, &c.

*Cum*, with, is joined to the End of these *Ablatives*, *se*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *huc*, *quo*, and *quibus*, the English comes immediately before them; as, *tecum*, with me; *tecum*, with thee; *secum*, with him, &c. In Poets we sometimes read *cum quibus*, for *quibuscum*.

B. If *Instructors* desire that their *Pupils* should understand any *Author* well, they must teach the *Pro* with the greatest *Care* and *Diligence*, and frequently enquire of them, wherever such *Substives* in their *Lessons*, what the *Nouns* are, which they *desent*.

## VERB, the third Part of Speech.

VERB is that Part of Speech, which expresses what is said of Persons and Things; and it be known in English by putting *I*, *th*, or *is*, before it; as, *I run*, *it rains*, *to live*. It is called *Verb*, i. e. a Word by Way of Eminentia, because without it no Sentence can be made.

Verbs signify either to do some Action; or to exist and be in some Condition: Hence their Signification they may be divided into Kinds or Sorts; Active, Passive and Neuter. An Active Verb expresses an Action; and implies an Agent who acts or does something, and an act acted upon; as, the Master corrects the Boy: *ceptor corrigit Puerum*.

Such Verbs are also called *Transitives*, because they

they signify an Action, which passes from the Agent and terminates on the Object.

A *Passive Verb* signifies Suffering, namely, Effect of Action; or that something is applied done to the Nominative or Subject spoken of. *I am taught, Doctor: The Boy is corrected, corrigitur.* It has commonly one of these *am, is, are, art, was, wast, were, wert, beest, be,* before it's English, with a Word in *en, or t;* as, *I am taught, thou art advised,*

*Not.* Substantives are also used, sometimes in active or passive Sense. Thus, Love in the Lover, signifies actively; but as to the Person beloved, passively. This active and passive Sense of Nouns is often expressed in Law-Books by different Words of different Terminations, the active in *y*, the passive in *ee*; as, Donor, Donor, Grantor, Grantee; Petitioner, Petitionee.

The third Sort of Verbs called Neuters; as being properly neither active nor passive, may be divided into two Sorts; Substantive, proper Neuters and improper Neuters.

Substantive Verbs are such as signify Being or Existence; as, *I am, Sun.*

Proper Neuters express the State or Condition of Persons and Things; as, *I am pale, Palleo.*

Improper Neuters, called also Intransitives, signify a Sort of Action, but in such a Manner, that the Action does not pass over to any Object different from the Nominative, or Agent, who acts; as, in this Instance, *Man lives*, the Action of living does not terminate on any other Object, but is confined within the Man himself.

Proper Neuters, as also Intransitives, will not take *it* after them; but *active* Transitives will always take *it* in Sense, when the Word *it* is put after them; as, *I run it*, is Nonsense; except *it* be a Word of near Signification; as, *I live it*, viz. *it* is a Neuter and Verbs Intransitives, often have *it* after them.



Passive Verb in English; but are never used in the Passive Voice in Latin; as, *caleo*, not *caleor*, I am warm, unless they are used impersonally; as, *pugnatur*, it is fought, &c.

Several Verbs are called Active, which in Reality do not signify Action; but in a common Way of Conception are supposed so to be; as, *audio*, to hear, *percipio*, to perceive, are called active Verbs, tho' they signify no Action at all, but Passion, or Effect of external Objects upon the Mind only.

Some Verbs in English have an active Signification, but in Latin a passive Ending; as, I speak, *loquor*; which may properly be called Active Deponents, because they signify active-y, but have laid down their active Ending; as those Neuters which signify passively, and yet have laid down their passive Ending, may, for the same Reason, be called passive Deponents.

Some few Verbs ending in *or*, are used by Authors commonly, namely, both in an active and passive Signification; as, *sektor*, I follow; *sektor*, I am followed.

Verbs are declined thro' *Moods*, which signify the Manner in which any Thing is said or predicated: And *Tenses*, which signify the various Distinctions of Time.

There are four *Moods* or *Methods* of affirming or expressing: The Indicative, Imperative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive.

The *Indicative Mood* affirms, asserts or declares; as, *amo*, I love, *lego*, I read; or else asks a Question; as, *Legis tu?* Are you reading?

The *Imperative Mood* commands, exhorts, advises and intreats; as, *hæc*, hearken, attend.

The Future of the Indicative, the Present and Future of the Subjunctive, are often used for this Mood; as, *Non occides*, -occidas, -occideris; Thou shalt not (mayest not) kill; instead of, Ne occide; Do not kill. On

On the contrary, the Imperative is sometimes put for the Future of the Indicative and Subjunctive, agreeable to the Idiom of the Hebrew Language; which, the Way, may serve to explain some Passages in the Old Testament, which, tho' translated imperatively, might be changed into the Indicative Future, and be understood, as Predictions of Calamities.

But since there is no good Reason to suppose that such a change of Moods and Tenses was always intended, they may be sometimes understood in their most natural Sense as proper Imperatives or Optatives, and refer to the temporal destruction of such *public* Enemies as were engaged in an *unjust Cause*. For as they fought against such unjust Enemies, and endeavoured to destroy them, why should they not also wish and pray for it?

The Subjunctive Mood is so called, because it is subjoined to, or depends upon some other Verb in the same Sentence, either before or after it, and has commonly some Conjunction, Relative or Indefinite, joined with it; as, I was miserable when I loved; *Eram miser cum amarem*. It is used to express the End or Design; the Condition or Supposition which is made or proposed; I read, that I may learn; *Lego, ut discam*.

*Not.* As a Mood is a particular Form of the Verb, denoting the Manner in which a Thing is, does, or suffers; or expressing an Intention of the Mind concerning such Being, Doing or Suffering, there are no more Moods in any Language than there are different Forms of the Verb, appropriated to signify such different Manners of Representation. Hence, tho' the Greeks have a peculiar Form of their Verbs, by which they express a Wishing, which properly constitutes an Optative or Wishing Mood. Yet since the Latins have no such Form, it is with great Impropriety that some Grammarians have ascribed an Optative Mood to this Language.

The Optative of the Greeks is expressed by the Subjunctive, which perhaps depends on *Opto*, to wish, understood, with, *ut*, *ut*, or *utinam*.

It appears also from the foregoing Account of Moods, that what is called by some the Potential Mood, should be referred to the Subjunctive, since it has no different name appropriated to express it. Verbs may be said to be in the Potential Mood, when besides the simple Affirmation of the Verb, they imply some Power, Possibility, Liberty, Obligation, Duty or Will, which are expressed by these helping Verbs, *may, might, can, could, ought, must, would, should*, before the Verb. The mere Expressions of Power, Possibility, Liberty, Obligation, &c. belong to the Indicative; but when they are conditional; depending on something preceding, they are referred to the Subjunctive. And hence they are sometimes better turned into Latin by *Possim, Potest, Oportet, Decet, Debeo, Volo*, in the Indicative than an Infinitive following, than by the Subjunctive. The first three Moods are called finite, because they have certain fixed Endings answering to the Words called Persons, both singular and Plural. But the Infinitive Mood is not confined to one Number or Person more than another, but expresses the Meaning of the Verb in general common with the Particle *to* before it in English; as, *to love, amare*.

But there are some Verbs: as, *bid, dare, need, make, hear, feel, let*, and sometimes *have, &c.* which have an Infinitive after them without *to*.

### TENSES OR TIMES

Time can properly be distinguished only into *present*, and *future*: Yet Verbs in Latin are divided through five Tenses or Times, which have different Terminations; viz. The Present, the Preterperfect, Preterperfect, Preterpluperfect and Future.

The



The *Present* Tense speaks of the Time that *present now*, of the Action *now doing*; as, *Lego*, I read, i. e. I am now reading, and not yet done.

The *Preterimperfect* Tense has often the helping Verb *did* and *didst* before it in English, and speaks of the past Time. but intimates that some thing was then doing, which was not finished at the Time spoken of; as, *Legebam*, I *did read*, or *was then reading*.

The *Preterperfect* Tense has the helping Verb *has* and *had* before it, and speaks of the Time perfectly past, of an Action finished without Reference to any Thing else; as, *Legi*, I *have read*, i. e. I have quite done reading. These two Tenses are sometimes used for one another.

The *Preterpluperfect* Tense has *had* and *had* before it, and speaks also of the Time past, but implies that something was done before another Thing, which was also done; as, *I had read an Hour*, before I wrote my Exercise.

The *Future* Tense has the helping Verbs, *shall* and *will* before it, and speaks of the Time to come indefinitely; as, *I will read*, *that is*, some Time or other.

*Note.* To these some add a future Perfect, or second Future, which has *shall* or *will have* before it in English and refers to a Time, when a Thing yet future shall be finished; as, When I shall have supped, i. e. after Supper, you shall read; *Cum conavero tu leges*; where *Cum conabo tu leges*, would signify, when I shall sup, i. e. in Time of Supper. But since this Tense in Latin is not different in its Ending from the future of the Subjunctive, it may be referred to it.

**K**

## When

When a helping Verb is joined to another, it changes its own Ending, but the Verb which it affixes is not declined.

**PERSONS of VERBS.**  
A Verb has much the same Respect to its Nominative, which an Adjective has to its Substantive; and therefore as an Adjective has strictly speaking, neither Gender nor Number, but certain Terminations fitted to those its Substantive; so a Verb has properly neither Person nor Number, but certain Terminations answering to Persons and Number of its Nominative.

**Note 1.** The first Person has only *Ego, I; we*: The second has only *Tu, thou, or you, you, or ye*. Therefore all other Nouns and Pronouns are of the third Person, only *Ipse* may be any Person; unless when they are used relatively.

2. The Persons are set before the Verbs; as, *I love you*: Except in the Imperative Mood; as, *Let him love, Amato ille*: Or when a Question is asked; as, *the King come? Venitne Rex?* Also after *ibi* and the Nominative often follows the Verb; as, *There was a Man.*

3. The Imperative Mood has no first Person, neither singular nor plural, because no Man can exhort or entreat himself; or if he would, he must speak to himself in the second Person. Hence, when any Thing is imperatively expressed by the first Person of a Verb, the a first Person of one of the other Moods and Tenses may be used; as, *Let us go, Eamus.*

A Conjugation is the Form or Way of declining Verbs thro' Persons, Tenses, and Moods.

There are four Conjugations of Verbs ending in *o*; three of which have the Vowels *a, e, i*, before *re*, in the Infinitive; as, *Amare, Morari, Audire*. The short Conjugation has *e* short before *re*; as, *Regere*.



**Not.** These Vowels are commonly pronounced in the  
 other Parts of the Verb in the several Conjugations, as  
 they are in the Infinitive.

But *e* is short in the long Conjugations in the  
 tenses that end in *ram, rim, ro*; and in the Fu-  
 ture Tense Indicative, Passive Voice, in *beris, bere*,  
 on the contrary the last *e* but one is long in the  
 short Conjugation, as well as in the others, in the  
 Preterimperfect, and third Person plural of the  
 Preterperfect, and in the future of the Indicative  
 active; also in the future of the Indicative passive,  
 and in the Preterimperfect of the Subjunctive; as,  
*gebam, rexerunt, ēre, regēmus, eris; regar,*  
*ere; regerer, eris, ēre, &c.*

*e* is short in *bimus, hitis; bitur, bimur, bimini*.  
 It would be the most rational Method to place the  
 long Conjugations first, and the short one last; but  
 it is a Matter of little Consequence, the common Or-  
 der is followed.

The principal Parts of Verbs from which the rest are  
 formed, are as follows,

*amo, amas, amare, amavi, amatum*; to love.  
*monéo, mones, monere, monui, monitum*; to advise.  
*rego, regis, regere, rexi, rectum*; to rule.  
*audio, audis, audire, audiui, auditum*; to hear.

ACTIVE VOICE. INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Sing.* I love, *or* do love. Thou lovest, *or* dost love.  
*Plur.* We love, *or* do love. He loveth, loves, doth love, *or*  
 loves. *Plur.* We, You, *or* Ye, they love, *or* do love.

Singular.

Plural.

Ego tu	ille	nos	vos	illi
amo, amas, amat;		amamus, amatis, amant.		
monéo, mones, monet;		monemus, monetis, monent.		
rego, regis, regit;		regimus, regitis, regunt.		
audio, audis, audit;		audimus, audimur, audiunt.		

Sing.

Sing. I loved, or did love. Thou lovedst, or didst love.  
You loved, or did love. He loved, or did love.

Plur. We, You, or Ye, they loved, or did love.  
Amabam, }  
Monebam, } bas, bat; } bamus, batis, bant.  
Regebam, }  
Audiebam, }

Sing. I have loved. Thou hast loved, or you have loved.  
He hath, or has loved.  
Plur. We, You, or Ye, they have loved.

Amavi, }  
Monevi, } isti, it; } imus, istis, erunt, or ere.  
Rexi, }  
Audivi, }

Sing. I had loved. Thou hadst loved, or you had loved.  
He had loved.

Plur. We, You, Ye, they had loved.  
Amaveram, }  
Monueram, } eras, erat; } eramus, eratis, erant.  
Rexeram, }  
Audiveram, }

Sing. I shall, or will love. Thou shalt, or wilt love.  
You shall, or will love. He shall, or will love.

Plur. We, You, Ye, they shall, or will love.  
Amabo, }  
Monebo, } bis, bit; } binus, bitis, bunt.  
Regam, }  
Audiam, } es, et; } emus, etis, ent.

*Dub* and *batb* belong to the serious and solemn *S*  
*bat* and *bas* to the familiar.

The Tenses of the active Verb may be expressed  
the Substantive or essential Verb *Am* and the  
Participle, especially if we would signify more fully  
the Thing is now a-doing, or the Continuance in doing  
which seems to be a Grecism; as, I am loving; you  
loving; he is loving.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. Love thou, or love you, or do thou love; do you  
 e; let him love.

Plur. Love ye, you, or do ye, you love; let them love.

na, amato; amato; me, atote; anto.

one, moneto; moneto; ete, ctote; ento.

ge, regito; regito; ite, itote; unto.

di, audito; audito; ite, itote; unto.

the Subjunctive MOOD, often used as the Potential.

Sing. If I love; if thou love; if you love; if he love;

I may love; thou mayst love; he may love.

Plur. If we, ye, you love, &c.

Amem, es, et; | emus, esis, ent.

Moneam,

Regam, } as, at; | amus, atis, ant.

Audiam,

I might, would, should, or could love, thou mightest,  
 wouldst, couldst, or shouldst love, &c.

Amarem,

Monerem,

Regerem,

Audirem,

res, tet; | remus, retis, rent.

I might have loved, (or would, should, or could have  
 ved.)

Amaverim,

Monuerim,

Rexerim,

Audiverim,

eris, erit; | erimus, eritis, erint.

I might had loved, (or would or should had loved.)

Amav-issim,

Monu-issim,

Rex-issim,

Audiv-issim,

isses, isset; | issemus, issetis, issent.

I shall, or will have loved.

Amav-ero,

Monu-ero,

Rex-ero,

Audiv-ero,

eris, erit; | erimus, eritis, erint.

IN-



## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Mon-*ere*, to advise.  
 Preterimperfect. Reg-*ere*, to rule.  
 Aud-*ire*, to hear.  
 Amav-*isse*, to have loved.  
 Preterperfect and Monu-*isse*, to have advised.  
 Preterpluperfect. Rex-*isse*, to have ruled.  
 Audiv-*isse*, to have heard.

Future. Amatū-rum, *esse*, to be about to love.  
 Monitū-rum, *esse*, to be about to advise.  
 Rectū-rum, *esse*, to be about to rule.  
 Auditū-rum, *esse*, to be about to hear.

This Infinitive is varied, and agrees with the Noun to which it has Relation, commonly.

## GERUNDS.

Amān-di, of loving; do, in *or* by loving; dum, to love.  
 Monēn-di, of advising; do, in advising; dum, to advise.  
 Regēn-di, of ruling; do, in *or* by ruling; dum, to rule.  
 Audiēn-di, of hearing; do, in *or* by hearing; dum, to hear.

Supines. Amat-um, to love; u, to be loved.  
 Monit-um, to advise; u, to be advised.  
 Rect-um, to rule; u, to be ruled.  
 Audit-um, to hear; u, to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Tense. Am-ans, loving. } Preterp. Amāt-us, loved.  
 Mon-ens, advising. } Monit-us, advised.  
 Reg-ens, ruling. } Rect-us, ruled.  
 Audi-ens, hearing. } Audit-us, heard.

Future in *rus*.

Future in *us*.

Amatū-rus, about to love. Amān-dus, to be loved.  
 Monitū-rus, about to advise. Monēn-dus, to be advised.  
 Rectū-rus, about to rule. Regen-dus, to be ruled.  
 Auditū-rus, about to hear. Audiēn-dus, to be heard.

\* 1. When Words ending in *ing* will take Adjectives before them, they are not Participles but Substantives, as, a good Beginning, an excellent Understanding.

2. Participles in *ing* sometimes take *a* before them in the familiar Style, especially after Verbs of Motion; as, go *a* hunting, to go *a* fishing.

**PASSIVE VERBS** of the four Conjugations end in *or* ; want the Preterperfect Tense, and those Tenses which are derived from it, and are thus conjugated.

Amor, amaris, *or* amare, amari, to be loved.

Moneor, moneris, *or* monere, moneri, to be admonished.

Regor, regeris, *or* regere, regi, to be ruled.

Audior, audiris, *or* audire, audiri, to be heard.

I am loved.

Amor, aris *or* are, atur ; amur, amini, amantur.

Mone-or, eris *or* ere, etur ; emur, emini, entur.

Reg-or, eris *or* ere, itur ; imur, imini, iuntur.

Aud-ior, iris *or* ire, itur ; imur, imini, iuntur.

I was loved.

Ama-bar,	} baris <i>or</i> bare, batur ;   bamur, bamini, bantur.
Mone-bar,	
Rege-bar,	
Audie-bar,	

I shall or will be loved.

a-bor,	} beris <i>or</i> bere, bitur ;   bimur, bimini, buntur
ne-bor,	
g-ar,	} eris <i>or</i> ere, etur ;   emur, emini, entur.
di-ar,	

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

be thou loved, &c. be ye loved, let them be loved.

Am-are, ator ; ator ; amin-i, antor.

Mon-ere, etor ; etor ; emin-i, entor.

Reg-ere, itor ; itor ; imin-i, iuntor.

Aud-ire, itor ; itor ; imin-i, iuntor.

**Subjunctive MOOD**, often used as the Potential.

I may or can be loved.

Am-er eris *or* ere, etur ; emur, emini, entur.

Mone-ar, aris *or* are, atur, amur, amini, antur.

Reg-ar, aris *or* are, atur, amur, amini, antur.

Aud-iar, aris *or* are, atur, amur, amini, antur.

ni I might, would, should, or could be loved.  
 Ama-*rer*,  
 Mon-*er*,  
 Rege-*rer*,  
 Audi-*rer*,  
 } *reris* or *re-re*, *retur*; | *remur*, *ten-*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Ama-*ri*, to be loved.  
 Present and Mon-*eri*, to be advised.  
 Preterimperfect. Reg-*i*, to be ruled;  
 Aud-*iri*, to be heard.  
 Amat-*um*,  
 Preterperfect and Monit-*um*, } *esse* or *to have*,  
 Preterpluperfect. Rect-*um*, } *fuisse*, *had been*  
 Audit-*um*, }  
 Amat-*um*, *iri*, to be about to be loved.  
 Future. Monit-*um*, *iri*, to be about to be advised.  
 Rect-*um*, *iri*, to be about to be ruled.  
 Audit-*um*, *iri*, to be about to be heard.

The essential Verb *Sum* is commonly reckoned a helping Verb, because Grammarians used to make up (properly) the Preterperfect Tense of the Indicative active, and the Tenses derived from it, by joining together the Present and Preterperfect Tenses of this Verb. *Sum* borrows it's preter Tense from the old Verb *Esse* that is now out of Use, which Tense with those derived from it are regularly declined like any other Tense of active Verbs, ending in *-i*. The other Tenses of *Sum* and its Compounds, are thus declined:

*Sum*, *es*, *fui*, *esse*, *futurus*, To be,  
*Possum*, *potes*, *potui*, *posse*, To be able,  
*Prosum*, *prodes*, *profui*, *prodesse*, *profuturus*, To profit

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

I am, thou art, or you are, he is. We are, ye are, they are.

Present *Sum*, *es*, *est*, | *sumus*, *estis*, *sunt*,  
*Possum*, *potes*, *potest*, | *possumus*, *potestis*, *possunt*,  
*Prosum*, *prodes*, *prodest*, | *prosumus*, *prodestis*, *prodesse*



I was, thou wast, he was: We were, ye were, they were

Eram, eras, erat, | eramus, eratis, erant.

Poteram, poteras, &c.

Proderam, proderas, &c.

have been, thou hast been, you have been, he hath  
or has been, &c.

preterperfect, Fui, potui, profui, isti, it, &c. like  
tui, itis, &c.

shall or will be, thou shalt or wilt be, you shall or  
will be, &c.

Ero, eris, erit, | erimus, eritis, erunt.

Potero, poteris, &c.

Prodero, proderis, &c.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

you, or do you be; Be ye, you, or do ye, you be;

thou, or do thou be; let him be, let them be.

Es, esto; I t aeste, estote; sunt.

Prodes, prodesto, &c.

Possim, hath no Imperative.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

If I be, If thou be, if you be, he may be, &c.

I may be, thou mayest be, he may be, &c.

Sim, sis, sit, | simus, sitis, sint.

Possim, possis, &c.

Prosim, prosis, &c.

If I were, if thou wert, if he were, &c.

I might be, thou mightest be.

Essem, esses, esset, | essemus, essetis, essent.

Possim, posses, posses, &c.

Prodessem, prodesse, &c.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

To be.

L

To have or had been.

Present



# SUBJUNCTIVE.

Vel-im, } is, it, | imus, itis, int.  
Nol-im,  
Mal-im,

Vell-em, } es, et, | emus, etis, ent.  
Noll-em,  
Mall-em,

## INFINITIVE

Velle.	} Preterp. and Pluperf.	Voluisse.	} Participle.	Volens.
Nolle.		Noluisse.		Nolens.
Malle.		Maluisse.		Malens.

These Verbs, Edo, to eat; Eo, to go; Fero, to bear; Fio, to be made, or to become; Fero, to be suffered; are thus declined.

edo, edere, or esse, edi, estum, or esum.

eo, ire, ivi, itum.

fero, ferre, tuli, latum.

fio, fieri factus, sum.

fero, ferri, latus, sum,

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

edo edis or es, edit or est.	} edimus, editis, edunt.	
eo, is, it.		imus, itis, eunt.
fero, fers, fert.		ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
fio, tis, fit.		fimus, fitis, fiunt.
fero, feris, ferre, fertur.	ferimur, ferimini, feruntur	

Edam, es, et, } emus, etis, ent.

Ibo, ibis, ibit, } ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

Feram, } es, et, } emus, etis, ent.

Fiam, }  
Ferar, eris, or ere, } etur, | remur, remini, reutur.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### PRESENT TENSE.

esto, ede, edito, esto, edito, (este, edite,) edunto.  
ito, ito, | ite, itote, eunto, (estote, editote)

Fer



Fer, ferto, ferto, ferte, fertote, ferunto,  
 Fi, fito, fito, fite, fitote, funto,  
 Ferre, fertor, fertor, ferimini, feruntor.

# SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present T.	Edam,	{	as, at,	{	amur, atis,	{	ant,
	Eam,						
	Feram,						
	Fiam,						
	Ferar, raris, or rare, ratur.		ramur, ramini,				
Imperf. T.	Ederem or esset, ederes or esses, ederet or esset,	{	es, et,	{	emus, etis, ent,	{	
	Irem,						
	Ferem,						
	Fierem,						
	Ferrer, reris or rere, retur,		remur, remini, ren				

# INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperf. T.	Edere or esse,	{	Perfect and Plupers. T.	{	Edisse,
	Ire,				Ivisse,
	Ferre,				Tulisse,
	Fieri,				Factum esse or fuisse.
	Ferri,				Latum esse or fuisse.
Future T.	Esurum, esse or fuisse.				
	Iturum, esse or fuisse.				
	Laturum, esse or fuisse.				
	Factum iri, } Ger. Eundi, Eundo, Eundum.				
	Latum iri, } Part. Iens, euntis.				

In like manner their Compounds are declined.  
*Ambio* is regular, *Quo* and *Neque* want the Imperf. Mood.

*Note.* The Compounds of **F E R O** are declined—  
 Affero, attuli, allatum; Aufero, ablatum; Con-  
 contuli; Collatum; Differo, distuli, dilatum;  
 extuli, elatum; Infero, intuli, illatum; Offero, ob-  
 oblatum, &c.

## OF DERIVING AND FORMING VERBS.

Derivative Verbs are,

Inceptives, which signify that a Thing is begun, tending to Perfection. They are formed from the 1st Person sing. pres. Indic. as, *Caleo*, *cales*, and adding *eo*, *caleſco*, I grow warm.

Frequentatives, which signify Frequency of Action. They are derived from the latter Supine; as, from *ſtatū* is formed *Diſcuto*, I ſpeak often. They are all of the firſt Conjugation.

Deſideratives, which ſignify a Deſire of Action. Theſe too are formed from the latter Supine; by adding *eo*, as from *Eſu* is made *Eſurio*, I am hungry, or deſire to eat. Theſe are all of the fourth Conjugation.

Denominatives, which are derived from Nouns; as, *Græcor*, *Vulpinor*. Theſe are of the firſt Conjugation.

Diminutives; as, *Cantillo*, I ſing a little. Theſe are of the firſt Conjugation, and ſignify that the Action which they expreſs, is done only in a ſmall degree.

There are four principle Parts in every compleat Verb, from which all the reſt are formed; viz. the Preſent, and Preterperfect Tenses of the Indicative active; the Preſent of the Infinitive, and the Supine in *um*.

From the Preſ. Indic. act, are formed the Preterperfect, and Future of the ſame Mood; the Preſent of the Imperative; and the Preſent and Preterimperative of the Subjunctive and Infinitive. Thus the

Preterimp. or Imperfect, of the Indicative is formed from the Preſent, by changing *o* in the firſt Conjugation into *abam*; in the 2d into *ebam*; and in the two laſt into *ebam*.

The Future may be formed from the Imperative by changing *bam* into *bo*; in the two laſt by changing *ebam* into *am*; as, *Regebam*, *Regam*, &c. &c.

From the Preterp. Indic. are formed the Preterpluperfect of the ſame Mood; the Preterp. Preterplup. and Future of the Subjunctive, and Preterperfect of the Infinitive.

Thus

Thus the Pluperf. Indic. Perfect and Future, Subjunctive are formed from the first Person of the Perfect Indic. by changing *i* into *e* short, and adding *ram, rim, re*. The Pluperf. subjunct. and Infin. by adding *sem* and *se*, without any change. Thus: Amavi makes Amaveram, Amaverim, Amavero, Amavisseim, Amavisse. The formation of the other Parts from the Infinitive and Supine will be obvious on this Plan.

3. From the Pres. Infin. are formed the Participles of the Present Tense, and the Gerunds.

4. From the Supine in *um*, are formed the last Supine, the Perfect Participle, and that of the Future in *urus*.

Note 1. That the passive Voice is formed from the last Tenses of the Active by adding *r*, or changing *u* into *ur*.

Note 2. That Verbs in *io*, of the third Conjugation retain *i* before, unt, unto, eam, am, ens, endus, endus; but lose it in the Present, Infin. and Imperf. Subjunctive.

General Rules for the Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs in the several Conjugations.

I. Verbs of the first Conjugation form the Preterperfect in *avi* and their Supine in *atum*; as, Amo.

Except, Lavo, lavi, latum; juvo, uvi, tum; dedi; ito, fleti.

Nexo, cubo, neco, crepo, vero mico, } make *vi* and *um*.  
Demo, tono, sono, seco, plico, frico. }

II. Verbs of the second Conjugation form the Preterperfect in *ui*, and their Supine in *itum*; as, Moneo.

Sedeo, Video, prandeo, strideo, have *di* and *sum*.  
Jubeo, mulceo, rideo, maneo, hæreo, ardeo, torqueo.

Tondeo, mordeo, pendeo, spondeo, make *to* and *sum*.  
(tonsum, consum, &c.)

Verbs in *geo*, and *rgeo*, make *si* and *sum*; as, Urgeo, urfi, sum.



But mulgeo; xi and si. Frigeo, augeo, lugeo, xi, etum.

Verbs in *veo* have *vi*; and *tum* — — — — —

But niveo, nivi, and nixi; Citeo, civi.

Leo, deleo, fleo, pleo, Cier, make *evir* — — — — —

Verbs of the third or Short Conjugation form their

Pref. Preter. Sup.

bo — — — bi — — — itum; bibo, bibi, bibitum.

Except Cumbo, *xi*; serivo, nubos — — —

co — — — ci — — — etum; ico, ici, ictum.

Ex. parco, perperci, parsi; dico, ducos — — —

do — — — di — — — lum; mando, mandi, mansum.

Ex. Some lose *n*; as, Sciindo, findo, fundo, foidi, i &c. Some redouble the first two Letters in the Preter. tho' not in the Supine; as, Tundo, pendo, tendo, do, cado, cado,

Cedo *ss*; vado, rado, lædo, ludo, divido, trudo.

Claudo, plaudo, rodo, make *ss* — — — *um*.

go } — — — xi — — — etum; jungo, xi, junctum.  
ho }

But *igo* makes *ss*

Lego, ago, frango-egi-etum;

Tango, pungo, redouble; tetigi, &c.

— — — ui — — — itum,

Ex. Psallo, fallo, falsi, falsum. Vello, velli, vulsi, sum;

Fallo, cello, pello-fefelli, ceculi, pepuli; falsum-  
ulsum.

mo — — — ui — — — itum, vomo, ui, itum;

but Premo, *ssi*-sum.

Ex. Emo, eini, emptum. Como, promo, demo, fumo, *psi*-ptum.

no — — — vi — — — itum; sino, sivi, situm;

Ex. Sterno, travi; temno-*psi*; sperno, sprevi; cerno, vi. gigno, pono, cano; genui, posui, cecini.

po — — — *psi* — — — ptum; Scalpo, *psi*, ptum.

quo—qui—stum.  
Ex. Rumpo, rupi; ore po, strepo, vi-

Ex. Coquo, coxi.  
ro—vi—tum.

But curo, curavi; verro, vixi; tero, trixi.

Uro, gero—si—quero, quelivi.  
lo—si—litum.

But Capesso, divi, and si, facesso si; viso, pin-fo.  
Sco—vi—tum.

Ex. Posco, poposci, disci, didici; quiaisco, qui-  
to—si—tum.

Ex. Sisto, sisti, peto, peti; mitto, misi; meto, meto-  
esto—exi—xum.

But Pecto and necto have also vi.  
Vo—vi—tum.

Ex. Vivo, vixi.  
uo—vi—utum.

Ex. Pluo, pluvi; fruio, frui—vi.  
xo—vi—xum.

There are some Verbs in *is* belonging to this Con-  
jugation, which for the most Part form their Preterperfect  
by casting away *is*; as, fugio, fugi. But capio, cepi;  
pario, peperii; cupio, cupi, sapio, rapio, &c.

IV. Verbs of the fourth Conjugation form their  
Preterperfect in *ivi*, and their Supine in *itum*.  
Audio.

Except Venio, Veni; Amicio, salio, vi; Vincio, vin-  
cio, vi.

Raucio, sarcio, sentio, haurio, cambio, sarcio, sep-  
fulcio, &c.

# COMPOUNDED VERBS.

COMPOUNDED Verbs form their Preterperfect  
and Supines like the simple Verbs.

x. The Letters, which are doubled in simple Verbs in the Preter, are not doubled in Compounds; unless sometimes in, *præ-de-ex-pro-curro*; and in *repugnari, re-*  
 xi. Also the Compounds of *Do, disco, sto, posco, re-* the Reduplication.

Some Compounds change *a* into *e*; as, *Damno, do, sacro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor, partio, po, patro, scando, spargo, pario.*

Others change *a* into *i*; as, *placeo, tango, labeo, lateo, falio, statuo, cado, lædo, pango, ano, quæro, cædo, egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapio, Ex. Posthabeo; Com-per-placeo; de-op-circum-pango.*

The Compounds of *scalpo, calco, salto, change into u*; as, *inculco.*

The Compounds of *claudio, quatio, lavo, lose a; excludo, diluo.*

The Compounds of *ago, rego, frango, emo, ro, capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, change the first Vowel in the Present Tense; and in the Infinitives formed from it into i*; as, *frango, refrin-*

When *lego* is compounded, except it be with *re, pro, sub, trans, ad*, its first Vowel is changed into *i*. *Intelligo, diligo, negligo, make lexi.*

DEPONENTS are conjugated like Passives, and form the Participles as if they were actives in *o*; but there are many Particulars which cannot be well reduced to any general Rule, and are therefore best learned by practice; as, *reor, ratus; fruor, fructus, or fruitus; misereor, certus; obliviscor, oblitus; adipiscor, adeptus; morior, mortuus, &c.*

Some Neuters have their Preter Tense like Passives; as, *gaudeo, gavissus; fido, fissus; audeo, ausus; soleo, solus; mereo, incestus.*

Some



Some Verbs seem to be redundant; having a Present Tense both of the Active and Passive Form; as, *Cogito, juro, titubo-avi-atus*, &c.

Many are defective, having neither Preter Tense nor Supines; as, Inceptives and Desideratives for the Imperative Part. There are sundry Verbs which have the Present Tense, and yet have no Supines.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

There are some Verbs called *impersonal*, because they are used for the most Part only in the third Person singular, without any proper Persons before them; as, *Decet, decebat, decuit, decuerat, decebit*, &c. *Pugnetur, pugnabatur, libet, ebat, uir; itum est; redet, erit, uir; pertesum est*, &c.

*Liquet*, has no perfect Tenses, nor desinences, in the Imperative.

Some, which are commonly impersonal Verbs, are sometimes used in the plural Number like other Verbs with proper Persons; and govern their proper Cases like other Verbs.

*Note.* The Verbs, which are accounted Impersonal in Latin, have the neuter Pronoun *id* before them in English, and sometimes *there*. And in this Case, *it* is employed to express the Subject of any Discourse or Inquiry—State or Condition of any Thing or Person—the Thing whatever it be, that is the Cause of any Effect or Event, or any Person considered merely as a Cause without regard to proper Personality; as, *It* happened on a certain Day. Who is *it* that calls? *It* is I. How is *it* with you? *It* rains, *it* thunders. The third Person plural is sometimes used in the same Manner; as, *They* say, *it* is said or reported.

### DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs want several Tenses and Persons; as, *can, could; will, would; shall, should; may, might*, in English, which have only two; *must, ought*, which have only one Tense.

which in Latin are these which are used only as follows

io,	{	Aio,	ais,	ait,	{	aunt.
ay,		Aiebam,	as,	at,		amus, atis, ant.

nam, } Inquam, -quis, -quit, -; -quimus, -quitis, -quiunt,  
fax, } Inquiebat, inquiebant; inquires, inquiet; In-  
          } que, inquito.

im, { Aufim, is, it, | int.

re {  
xim, } Faxim, is, ir. { int.

em { Forem, es, et, F emus, etis, ent. Fore.

Teram, erim, issem, ero, isse.

in, know, and Memento, mementote, *Imperative*,  
memini, remember.

which four have the Signification of Present and Per-

o, give, Cedo, credite.

Quæro, I pray. Quæro, quæsumus.

e, God save you. { Salve, etc; Salvete, Salvete,  
(Salvebis, Salvete.

hail, Ave, in like Manner.

For Dor and Der, of Dare, to give; and, For, of  
to be spoken? Sci, of Scire, to know are not in  
And for Dice, duce, face, fere, we use Dic, duc,  
fer. The Comic Poets use Scdes, sultis, capis, for  
udes, si vultis, cape si vis, &c.

**PARTICIPLE, or the fourth Part of SPEECH.**

ARTICLES are so called from taking *Part* of a Noun, as Gender and Case, and *Part* of a Verb; as, *Time* and Signification.

There are four Kinds of Participles; one of the preter, another of the preter Tense: one of the future in *ens*, and another of the future in *ans*.

## A Participe

A Participle of the present Tense in English ending in *ing*; in Latin in *ans* or *ens*; and it is formed of the perfect Tense Indicative, by changing the last Syllable into *ns*; as, amabam, amans; loquebar, loquens.

*Note.* When Continuation is signified, the English Verb may be varied thro' all its Tenses, by the Participle in *ing*, with the Verb *am*; as, I am reading, I was, I have been reading; but it is made in Latin by the proper Tenses of the Verb, not by the Participle; lego, not legens, sum, eram or fui.

A Participle of the preter Tense commonly has in English in, *d*, *t*, or *n*; as, loved, taught, slain; and in Latin in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*; as, amatus, visus, nexus; and in *us* viz. mortuus. It commonly signifies passive and is formed of the latter Supine, by adding *s*; as, lectus.

A Participle of the future in *rus*, signifies to do, like the infinitive Mood active; as, amaturus, to love, about to live. It is also formed of latter Supine, by adding *rus*; as, lectu, lecturus. The fut. Indic. is sometimes made by this Participle when purpose is signified, Profecturus, sum; I will go, i. e. I intend to go.

A Participle of the future in *us*, signifies passive like the infinitive Mood passive; as, amandus, to be loved. It may be formed of the present Participle, by changing *s* into *us*; as, legens, legendus.

*Note.* Participles are changed into Adjectives or Participials. 1. When they govern a Case which their Verb will not govern; as, appetens vini. 2. When compounded with a Preposition which their Verb does not admit; as, indoctus. 3. When they form all Degrees of Comparison; as, amans, —tior, —tissimus. 4. When they have no Respect to Time but are joined to Substantives merely to denote some Quality; as, Doctus Vir, a learned Man. Amandus Puer, a lovely Boy.

Tho' Participles and Participials are often expressed by the same Word, yet they differ both in Signification



Construction in Latin. The Participle refers to a single Act, and at a certain Time; but the Participial notes a Habit without any reference to Time. Thus *Patiens Frigus*, signifies a Person who is now at this time exposed to the Cold, whether he be able to bear or not; but *Patiens Frigoris* denotes one, who has been enured to the Cold, and fitted by Nature or Custom to bear it. *Doctus Grammaticam* signifies one, who has been taught Grammar, whether he understood it or not; but *Doctus Grammaticæ* is one, who has attained a good Understanding of it.

Participles of the preter Tense, in Verbs Deponent, have both an active and passive Signification, because their Verbs were anciently used common. But their Participles in *us* always signify passively.

*Obs.* The Participle of the present Tense, is declined like *Felix*. The rest are declined like *Bonus*, *a*, *um*.

The undeclinable Parts of Speech come now to be considered. These are sometimes called Particles or little Parts of Speech. They are, as it were, the Nerves and Ligaments of all Discourse; and the Clearness and Beauty of a good Style consists very much in the proper use of these Particles. There are but a very few Words that belong to them in Comparison of Nouns and Verbs; but these are used to express all Manner of Circumstances, Connexions and Relations; and therefore they necessarily have a great Variety of different Senses, all which Scholars may learn from proper English and Latin Dictionaries, which they should have always at Hand; and from their own careful Observation in reading Books.

### ADVERB, or the fourth Part of SPEECH.

An Adverb is a Part of Speech added or joined to a Verb or Word, to express some Circumstance, Quality or Manner of their Signification; as, he reads well, *Bene legit*, *agit sapienter*, he acts wisely.

*Obs.* 1. Most English Words ending in *ly*, are Adverbs they

they signify the Manner, or Likeness, the Terminon being a Contraction of *Ad*, which when it is added to Adjectives changes them into Adverbs; as, *juste*, wisely. The Latin Adverbs are made of Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives and Prepositions, and end mostly in *us*, *um*, *ter*, *ty*; as, *sanè*, truly; *subitò*, suddenly; *salutè*, more safely; *sensim*, gradually; *solum*, only; *sapienter*, wisely; *divinitus*, divinely.

2 Words of Quality, Time and Place, that have *a*, *an* or *ibi*, before them, are generally Adverbs; as, *bene*, well; *male*, ill; *nunc*, now; *tunc*, then; *hic*, here; *illic*, there, &c.

3. Some Adverbs derived of Adjectives are compared as, *Docte*, learnedly. *Fortiter*, fortius, fortissime, strongly, &c. *Bene*, melius, optime, well, &c. *Sæpe*, *fæpius*, *fæpissime*, often, &c. *Nuper*, *nuperrime*, lately, &c. They are very seldom compared in English by *er* and *est*.

*Note.* Adverbs are joined to other Words besides Verbs; as, *ferè* *Circulus*, almost a Circle; *magis*, more godly; *valde* *velociter*, very swiftly. They express briefly in one Word what would otherwise have taken more; as, *wisely*, *patiently*, might be expressed with *Wisdom*, with *Patience*.

2. Many Words are accounted Adverbs, which really are not; thus, *Age* is a Verb, *Unà* an Adjective: *Ergo* a Substantive from *ergon*, *opus*: *Denuò* is from *novo*: *Quòdsum*, *quò* *Versum*: *Dextrorsum*, *sinistrorsum*, *versum*: *Hicet*, *scilicet*, *videlicet*, *for* *in* *videre*, *licet*: *Quaré*, *qua* *re*: *Quamhorè*, *quam* *rem*: *Hodiè*, *hodie*: *Maximoperè*, *maximo opere*, &c. So, *hereof*, *herewith*, *whereby*, *whereunto*, in English are used for Pronouns.

The Adverb, *only*, *solum*, is often omitted, which is necessarily understood to complete the Sense; as, *A woman* *a Man* is brought to a Piece of Bread, i. e. only to a Piece.

# CONJUNCTION, or the Ninth Part of SPEECH.

CONJUNCTION is a Part of Speech that joins Words and Sentences together, and shows their dependence on each other. There are of several Kinds;

1. Copulatives; which are affirmatives; as, et, ac, &c. quis, and, etiam, quodque, item, &c. or Negatives; as, nec, neque, neu, neve, neither

It is often used expletively, or explanatory of the word that went before, and then it is to be rendered in English.

2. Two Negatives affirm in Latin and in English.

3. Disjunctives; as, aut, ve, vel, seu, five, either, or these denote a Distinction in the Things mentioned.

4. Connectives; as, sed, verum, autem, at, atque, but; en, attamen, yet, nevertheless. These intimate an opposition betwixt the Branches of the Sentence.

5. Conditionals; as, si, sin, siquidem, if, but if; modo, provided.

6. Causals; as, nam, namque, enim, for; quia, &c. cause.

7. Illatives; as, ergo, igitur, ideo, itaque, therefore; quum, quandoquidem, since, for as much as.

8. Exceptives; as, nisi, unless; præterquam; but besides.

9. Adverbials; as, deinde, afterwards; insuper, moreover; denique, lastly.

ne, ve, are called enclitic Conjunctions and are used at the end of Words, and accent the Syllable immediately preceding them. — They signify the same after as, et, an, vel, before them; and when Boys divide the Words of a Sentence Grammatically in order to construe it, where these Particles occur, it would be for them to change them into those in whose stead they are used.

There



There are also mentioned by Grammarians, Interrogatives; as, an? anne? nonne? utrum? whether: Nouns; as, ut, uti, to the End that: Diminutives; saltem, at least: Concessives; as, etsi, etiam, quamvis, altho': and some other Divisions of less importance.

### PREPOSITION, or the seventh Part of SPEECH

**A** PREPOSITION is a Part of Speech which shows the Relation of one Substantive Noun to another when set in Apposition; as, Sustulit palmas. *as, side* he lifted up his Hands to the Stars. Or, it is set before Nouns, Verbs, and Adverbs, in Composition, and alters their Signification; as, indoctus, unlearned.

For a more particular Account of them, and the Cases which they govern, see Syntax under that Article.

### INTERJECTION, or the eighth Part of SPEECH

**A**N Interjection is a Word thrown into a Sentence betokening some sudden Emotion of the Mind.

*Obs.* There's not much Reason to reckon Interjections Parts of Speech, inasmuch as they are little more than inarticulate Sounds, or Signs of our Mind, as, 1. Grief; as, eheu, alas! hei, wo's me! ah, oh, ahah? 2. Joy; as, Io, huzzah; evax, ho brave. 3. Laughing; as, Ha, ha, he. 4. Calling; as, Heus, heark'e me; Eho, he! 5. Praising; as, Euge, O brave, well done. 6. Rejection; as, Vah, away, pish, phy, fie; Hem, heyday hui, hoi, wo to you. 7. Wondering; as, Proh, Oh, O' Pape, strange! 8. Silence; as, au, whist, s't, hush, &c. almost the same in all Languages.

### SYNTAX, the third Part of GRAMMAR.

**S**YNTAX teaches to join the Words of a Sentence together in their proper Order, and is therefore the principal Part of Grammar.

A Sentence is a Number of Words expressed in proper Form, and ranged in proper Order, and concurring to make complete Sense.

The Construction of Sentences depends principally on the Concord or Agreement, and the Regimen or Government of Words.

One Word is said to agree with another, when it is in like Case, Number, Gender, or Person.

There are three Concords, viz. between the Verb and its Person; between an Adjective and its Substantive; between a Relative and its Antecedent.

One Word is said to govern another, when it causeth another to be in some Case or Mood.

Sentences are simple or compound.

A simple Sentence hath in it but one Subject or Nominative, and one finite Verb, that is, a Verb in the Indicative, Imperative, or Subjunctive Mood. Two or more simple Sentences joined together by one or more connective Words, become a compounded Sentence.

A Phrase is two or more Words rightly put together, in order to make a Part of a Sentence; and sometimes making a whole Sentence.

The Verb agrees with the Nominative Case, expressed or understood, in Number and Person;

*I write; the Master writeth; the Boys write.*

*ego scribo; Praeceptor scribit; Pueri scribunt.*

1. In order to find the Nominative Case, ask a Question on the Verb, by the Words, who, what or which; and the Word which answers to that Question, is the Nominative to the Verb; as, Q. Who writes? A. the Boys.

2. The first and second Persons being the Nominative Case, are seldom expressed in Latin, unless for sake of Emphasis, or Distinction; and in the Construction of a Discourse the third Person also is often understood. They are sometimes omitted in English, especially in the Imperative Mood.

3. When a Substantive is joined with *ego* or *tu*,  
N the

the Verb is of the Person of these Pronouns, and not the Noun.

II. The *Adjective*, whether Noun, Pronoun, Participle, agrees with its *Substantive*, in *Number*, *Case*, and *Gender*; as, Vir bonus vigilat, *a good Man watches*: Foemina casta amatur, *a chaste Woman is loved*; dulce Pomum petitur, *a sweet Apple is sought*.

*Note.* To find the Substantive with which the Adjectives agrees, ask a Question by the Words, who, who, or which; and the Word which answers the Question, is the Substantive; as, Q. Who is chaste? A. a Woman. what is sweet? A. an Apple.

*Obs.* A Verb between two Nominatives of different Numbers, an Adjective or Relative between two Substantives of different Genders or Numbers, may agree with either of them; as, Omnia Pontus erat or erant. All Things was or were Sea: Non omnis Error stultus est dicenda or dicendus, Every Error is not to be called Folly.

But if the principal Substantive be the proper Name of a Person, the Adjective will agree with it; as, Scipio puer esse credita est.

III. The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Substantive to which it refers, called the *Antecedent* in Number, Gender, and Person; as, Ego adsum, *qui inveniebam tuum librum*; I am present, who found your Book. Tu es stultus, *qui negligis studia*; Thou art foolish, who neglectest thy Studies.

1. And if there be no other Nominative, the Relative is the Nominative to the Verb; as, Vir sapit *qui loquitur pauca*; *ill* evitat Causas Offensionum. The Man is who speaks few Words; He avoids the Causes of Offences.



2. But if there be another Nominative to the Verb, the Relative is governed by the Verb or some other word in the Sentence on which it immediately depends; *Ille felix est, quem aliena pericula faciunt cautum;* is happy *whom* other Mens dangers make cautious. *Vir est amanda, quæ utitur Virtute, quæ nihil est melius,* the Woman is to be loved, *who* practises Virtue, than *which* there is nothing better.

As the Relative may be the Nominative Case to the Verb, so it may be the Substantive to the Adjective, which is joined to it, or cometh with it; as, *Noli amare Divitias quod est sordidissimum.* Be unwilling to love Riches *which* is most base.

Example of all the foregoing Rules about the Relative.

*Deus qui est sapientissimus, quem colimus, qui fabricavit mundum, cujus Munere vivimus, et a quo conservamur, æternus.* God *who* is most wise, *whom* we worship, *who* made the World, by *whose* Bounty we live, and by *whom* we are preserved, is eternal.

*Quod* with its Compounds *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, agrees with the Substantive in the same Case; but *quod* with its Compounds *aliquid*, &c. have no Substantive expressed, but they often govern one in the, Genitive by the foregoing Rule.

*Note.* The Antecedent most commonly is a Word that comes before the Relative; as, The Man is wise *who* (or *which* Man) speaks few Words; *Vir sapit qui (vir) loquitur pauca, (verba.)*

It may be found in the same Manner as the Nominative Case or Substantive, viz. by asking, *what* it is to which the Relative refers?

1. When a Pronoun of the third Person is the Antecedent to the Relative of the Nominative Case, that Pronoun Antecedent, is seldom expressed in Latin; as, He *who*, he that; *qui*, not *ille qui*.

3. The

3. The Relative sometimes refers to the more remote Antecedent ; as, When he speaketh a Lie, he speaks of his own, for he is a Liar, and the Father of it ; where it refers to *Lie*.

4. After *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, the Genitive of their Primitives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri* are elegantly left out ; and yet the Adjective or Relative agreeing with them, is expressed ; as, *Fuit meum (meus) solius Peccatum* ; It was my Fault alone ; *Omnes laudabant fortunas meas, (mei) qui haberem Filium tali ingenio præditum* ; All praised my Fortune, who had a Son endowed with such a fine Genius.

5. Interrogatives and Indefinites follow the Rule of the Relative ; as, *talis, qualis, quantus, quotus* ; as, *Facinus non omnibus una, nec diversa tamen ; quædam decet esse fororum*.

IV. A Noun of *Multitude* singular, two or more Substantives singular, usually have a *Verbal Adjective* and *Relative* plural ; as, *Turba ruunt, the Multitude rush* ; *Vir, Mulier et ego, sumus beati, qui timemus Deum* ; *The Man, Woman, and I, who fear God, are happy*.

The Verb, or Adjective, frequently agrees with the nearest preceding Substantive or Nominative, and is understood to the rest ; as, *Et ego in Culpa sum et tu* ; both I and you are in the Fault ; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa*. This Manner of Construction is most usual where the different Words signify one and the same Thing, or much to the same Purpose ; as, *Mens, Ratio, et Consilium est in Senibus* ; Understanding, Reason, and Prudence is in old Men.

*Note 1.* If they be of different Persons or Genders, the Verb, Adjective, or Relative, will be of the most worthy.

*Note 2.* Of Persons, the first is more worthy than the second, and the second than the third ; and of Genders, the Masculine is the most worthy ; but if the Substantive

her all or some, signify Things without Life, the  
jective and Relative are commonly neuter; as, *Aqua  
Ignis sunt inexorabilia*; Fire and Water are not  
be intreated, or Things not to be intreated.

V. The *Infinitive Mood*, or *Part of a Sentence*,  
Sometimes put for the *Nominative Case* to a Verb,  
the *Substantive* to an Adjective, and the *Antecedent*  
a Relative; and then the Verb is the *third Per-*  
son, and the Adjective or Relative is the *Neuter*  
Gender; as, *Errare est humanum*, To mistake is  
human Frailty. *Legere, et non intelligere est ne-*  
*gigere, quod est perniciosum*; To read and not un-  
derstand, is to neglect, which is pernicious.

VI. The *Accusative Case* is put before the *Inf-*  
*initive Mood*; as, *Gaudeo te valere*, I rejoice that  
you are well.

Note 1. When *that* is a Conjunction, it is often made  
Latin by *quod* or *ut*; and sometimes by *quo* or *uti*; as,  
The Queen hides her Daughter in the shady Mountains  
she might take her away from the Trojans; *Regina  
dit Natam in umbrosis montibus, quod (ut, &c.) eripiat  
in Teucris*.

But these Particles, *quod*, *quo*, *ut*, *uti*, are often  
out in Latin, and the Word which is the Nom. in  
English is changed into the Acc. and the Verb is put  
to the Infinitive; as, I am glad that you are well.  
*Gaudeo quod tu valeas*; *gaudeo te valere*.

2. The Phrases which will bear to be thus changed  
commonly answer to the Question what? as, I heard  
you were sick. What did I hear? *that* you were  
sick. *Audivi te male habere*. But when *that* signifies  
the End *that*, or *that may, might*, it is commonly made  
by



by *ut* with the Subjunctive; sometimes, tho' very seldom, by *quo*, *quod*, or *uti*; as, the Sun does not think *that* [to the End that] Men may sleep, but *that* [to the End that] they may mind the most honorable Thing. Sol non lucet, *ut* homines *dormiant*, sed *ut* *invigilent* hominissimis rebus.

3. In these Instances in English, the Noun following the Conjunction *that*, being in the Nominative Case, the Substantive which is governed by the Verb, would be such a Case as that Verb requires; as, Who think that I am? not *whom*. But if the Conjunction *that*, left out, it is thus expressed, Whom do you think to be.

4. The Particle *that*, is commonly left out in English after the Verbs, to hope, to believe, to think, to be glad, to hear, to fear, and also the Relative *that*, is frequently omitted in English, but both are expressed in Latin; as, I believe he will come, *Credo quod* *veniat* or *eum* *venturum*: He did not obtain the Fame he desired, *Non obtinuit Famam quam* *cupivit*.

One that, those, he, she, or him that, are best managed in Latin by the Participles of their respective Voices; as, They that do wrong are bad, and they that suffer wrong are generally good; *Lædentes sunt mali*, et *laedentes* *magna ex parte boni*.

VII. *Substantive Verbs*, as *Sum*, *forem*, *sis*, *existo*, &c. certain Verbs passive of *calling*; as, *nominor*, *pellor*, *dicor*, and *existimor*, *babeor*, *nascor*, *putor*, *salutor*, *scribor*, *videor*, &c. and Verbs of *Gesturing* have the same Case after as before them; as, *Christus est Deus*; *Christ is God*. *Non licet nobis esse tam disertis* (*hominibus*) or, *Non licet nos esse tam disertos* (*Homines*); It is not lawful for us to be eloquent. *Ille sedet Judex*, *he sits Judge*.

## VIII. The Genitive Case after Nouns.

When two Substantives come together expressing different Things, the latter having of before it, or an apostrophe in English is the Genitive in Latin;

the Fear of the Lord is the Beginning of Wisdom, the Lord's Fear is Wisdom's Beginning. *Timor Domini est initium sapientie.*

But if they both refer to the same Person or Thing, the latter being added to explain the former more fully, they are put in the same Case by Apposition; as, Jesus Christus, filius Dei est Salvator Mundi. Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is the Saviour of the World.

The Genitive has a great variety of Significations; Possession, from which it is sometimes called the Possessive Case; as, Cicero's Farm, i. e. belonging to him as owner.

2. It denotes the Subject; as, a Cup of Water; the Birth of Abraham.

3. The Object; as, We are justified by the Faith of Christ, i. e. in Christ. The Fear of God, &c. &c.

Note 4. The Genitive answers to this Question, *whence?* as; Doctrina Magistri; The Learning of the Master.

5. It is sometimes made by a Possessive Adjective; as, *Carmina Virgilii, or Virgiliana sunt sublimia.* The Poems of Virgil or the Virgilian Poems, are sublime.

But these Genitive Cases of the Primitive Pronouns, *ei, tui, sui, nostri, and vestri*, are used when a Person is signified, and the English of the Genitive Case cannot well be changed into the English of the Possessive; as, *amor mei*; the Love of me: *Partis tui*; Part of thee.

When Possession, &c. is signified, *Meus, tuus, suus, vester*, are to be used; as, *Meus Liber*; my Book, i. e. my Property.

3. When the last Substantive has an Adjective of Praise or Dispraise joined with it, it may be put

in

in the *Genitive* or *Ablative*; as, *Puer summæ Prudentiæ*, vel summæ *Prudentiæ*, amator; *A Boy*, very great *Prudence*, is loved.

4. When the Substantives, *Man*, *Person*, or *Thing* come after an *Adjective* in English, they are commonly left out in Latin, and the *Adjective* after *Man*, is put without it in the *Masculine Gender*, and the *Adjective* after *Thing* is put in the *Neuter*. And these *Adjectives*, placed thus substantively, govern a *Genitive*, especially if they signify *Quantity*, as, *Mali sunt puniendi*, or *boni non lædantur*; *Evil Men are to be punished*, *that good Men may not be hurt*. *Multa eveniunt, quæ non volumus*; *Many Things happen which we would not*. *Tanta calamitatis est, nescio quid Consilii capiam*. *This is so much Calamity, I don't know what Counsel shall take*. *Multum Pecuniæ*; *much Money*.

*Note.* These Words are sometimes left out in English, and the *Adjectives* are used as if they were Substantives, as, *The Righteous*, *the Wicked*, &c.

#### IX. The Genitive Case after Adjectives.

*Adjectives* which signify any *Affection* of the Mind, as *desire*, *knowledge*, *ignorance*, *guilt*, govern the *Genitive*; as, *Reus criminis timet Judicem confite-recti*; *A Man guilty of a Crime fears a Judge confessor of Uprightness*. *Memor esto brevis ævi*; *Be mindful of your short life*.

*Note.* To this Rule belong these *Adjectives*, *Studiosus*, *curiosus*, *gnarus*, *callidus*, *providus*, *docilis*, *præfagus*, *innocens*, *integer*, *certus*, *memor*, *eruditus*, *expertus*, *dubius*, *anxius*, *solicitus*, *convictus*, *manifestus*, *suspectus*, *emulus*, *munificus*, *parcus*, *prodigus*, *curus*, &c.



: Adjectives signifying *Plenty* or *Want* govern a *Genitive* or *Ablative*; as, *Puer otiosus est inopis mens vel Mente*; *An idle Boy is void of Understanding.*

ore. That *Distentus*, *gravidus*, *refertus* and *orbis*, *vacuus*, *viduus*, chuse rather the *Ablative*: *Indignus*, *impos*, and *impos*, the *Genitive*.

. Verbals ending in *ax*, and Participials in *ans*, and *us*, govern a *Genitive*; as, *Temus edax Rerum*; *Time devours Things.* *Nepos est avari* *et sui profusus*; *A Spendthrift is greedy of his own Goods, and lavish of his own.*

. Partitives, and Words placed partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives, and Numerals, sometimes govern a *Genitive plural*; and they commonly of the same Gender with the Substantive, which they govern; as, *Quis Nostrum innocens?* *Who of us is innocent?* *Senior fratrum dives.* *The Elder of the Brothers is rich.* *Clio una Musarum.* *Clio is one of the Muses.* *Virgilius optimus Poetarum.* *Virgil was the best of Poets.*

This Gen. may be resolved into *ante*, *inter*, with the *or de*, *e*, *ex*. with the Ab.; as, *Epaminondas eratissimus Ducum*, i. e. *inter Duces* or *de*, *e*, *ex*, *tribus*: *Epaminondas was the bravest of Generals.*

§. I. The Reason why such Nouns agree in Gender with the Noun, which they govern, is because some Case of that Substantive is understood; as, *The fairest of Apes is deformed*, *Pulcherrima [Simia] Simum est deformis.*

The *Genitive plural* is therefore often omitted; as, *The fairest Ape is deformed.* In such Phrases, as, *One*

of the wisest of Men, &c. the last of seems to be redundant, and should not be imitated.

3. Partitives, &c. take the Genitive singular of collective Nouns; and do not necessarily agree with them in Gender; as, *Præstantissimus Civitatis*; The most excellent in the City.

## X. The Genitive Case after Verbs.

1. *Sum*, when it signifies Possession, Proper or Duty, governs the Genitive; as, *Est Regis parcere Subjectis*. It is the Duty of Kings to spare their Subjects. *Est orantis cogitare cælestia* is the Duty of one that prays to think of heavenly Things.

*Note* 1. The Neuters, *Meum*, *tuum*, *suum*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, and Nouns possessive, are the Nominative; Non *nostrum* sed *belluinum* est pugnare; It is not for us Beasts, to fight. *Officium* or *Opus* are understood here.

2. Verbs of esteeming govern an Accusative of the Thing esteemed, and a Genitive of the Value how much; as, *Stulti æstimant Voluptatem magnâ* Fools esteem Pleasure at a great Price.

*Note*. That the Verb *æstimo* itself sometimes governs the Ablative: And that *flocci*, *nauci*, *nihili*, *pili*, *jus*, *assis*, *teruncii*, are especially used with the Verb *æstimo*, *pendo*, *facio*; as, *Nec hujus Facio*; Nor do I value him thus much.

3. *Reminiscor*, *obliscor*, *recordor*, & *memor* govern a Genitive, and sometimes an Accusative; as, *Ingratus Beneficiorum obliviscitur*; An ungrateful Man forgets Benefits. *Recordare novissimorum* Remember the last Things.

*Note.* Memini, when it signifies to make *Mention of*, and also Recordor, have frequently an Ablative with the Preposition *de* after them; as, *De quibus multi memi-  
unt*; Concerning which, many have made mention. I  
would know whether you remember any Thing concerning yourself. *Venio in men-  
tem* follows the same Construction; as, *Veni in mentem  
mihi Virgini*, I bethought me of the most holy  
Virgin.

4. Satago, misereor, miseresco, govern a Gen-  
itive; as, *Miserere civium tuorum*, Take Pity on  
our Countrymen.

*Note.* Also these Verbs, after the Manner of the Greeks  
and the Poets, have sometimes a Genitive; Ango, decu-  
rior, desipio, discrucior, fallo, *et* fallor, excrucior, fasti-  
dio, invideo, lætor, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor, ab-  
hæreo, desineo, desisto, quiesco, regno, adipiscor, con-  
fiteor, credo, frustror, furo, laudo, libero, levo, parti-  
cipio, prohibeo; as, *fastidit mei*. *Nec Semonis fallebar.  
sine querelarum*. *Regnavit Populorum*.

5. Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning,  
and acquitting, govern a Genitive of the *Crime* or  
*Thing*, one is accused, condemned, warned, or ac-  
quitted of, and an Acc. of the *Person*; as, *Res  
versæ commonefaciunt nos Officii*; Adversity  
sets us in Mind of our Dnty.

*Note.* This Gen. after Verbs of accusing, condemning  
and acquitting, may be changed into the Ab. with or  
without a Preposition; and after Verbs of warning, into  
the Ab. commonly with the Preposition *De*; as, *Purgo  
te hæc Culpâ, or de hæc Culpâ*; I acquit you of this  
fault, *De qua vos ante admonui*; Of which I admonished  
you before. It is governed commonly by some Ab. un-  
derstood; as, *Crimine, Pœnâ, Actione, Capite, Morte,*  
*et* *scilicet*, which Ablatives seldom admit a Preposition be-  
fore.



fore them; as, *Condemnabo te Furti*, i. e. *Crimine* will condemn you of Theft — But, *uterque*, *ullus*, *alter*, *neuter*, *ambo*, and the Superlative Degree, used only in the Ab. with such Verbs; as, *Accusatus an stupri*, *an utroque*? or *ac utroque*? Does he accuse Theft, or Dishonesty, or both?

6. *Consulo et facio* have a Genitive in these instances; *Æqui, boni, consulo*; *Æqui, boni, facio*. I take in good Part.

7. *Interest* and *Refert* govern the Genitive.

But, *Mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are used with them in the Ab. Femin, as some suppose, *re bene* understood; or, according to others, in the Abl. pl. Neut. as, *Refert Patris*; It concerns my Father's Interest *meâ*; It concerns me.

8. These impersonals, *Pœnitet, tædet, misere-*  
*miserefcit, pudet, and piget*, govern a Genitive of the Thing, and an Acc. of the Person; as, *Miseret te a totorum*, *Nec miseret, nec pudet te tui*; You pity others, you neither pity, nor are ashamed of yourself.

9. Adverbs of Time, Place and Quality, *Instar* and *Ergo*, govern a Genitive; as, *Nutque Loci, In no Place*; *Instar Montis, As big as a Mountain*; *Illius Ergo, For his Sake*.

N. B. The English Particle *of*, when it signifies *of* or *concerning*, is made by *de*; as, *Id de quo agimus*; That *of which* we treat. *Of* when it signifies *from*, is made by *a, ab, or de*; as, *Audivi a Patre*; I heard *from* Father. *For out of*, by *e* or *ex*; as, *Columnæ erant ex mure*; The Pillars were made *of* Marble.

## XI. The Dative Case after Adjectives.

1. Adjectives which signify *Profit* or *Disprofit*, *likeness* or *Unlikeness*, &c. govern the Dative; as, *benignus cunctis*, *blandus nulli*, *familiaris amicis æquus omnibus*; *Be kind to all, flattering to one, familiar with few, just to all.*

Note 1. Adjectives which signify Motion; and some others; as, *proclivis*, *pronus*, *propensus*, *velox celer*, *ardus piger*, *natus*, *commodus*, *incommodus*, *utilis*, *inutilis*, *vehemens*, *aptus*; have rather the Accusative with *ad*, than a Dative; as, *Est piger ad Pœnas Princeps Præmia velox*; A Prince is slow to punish, and ready to reward.

2. Some of these also govern the Genitive; as, *amicus*, *inimicus socius*, *vicinus*, *par*, *æqualis*, *similis*, *disimilis*, *proprius*, *communis*, *fidus*, *conterminus*, *adversarius*, *contrarius*, *superstes*; as, *Vitia sunt virtutum contraria*, Cic. *Quem metuis par hujus erat*, Lucan.

3. *Immunis*, *alienus*, besides the Genitive and Dative, sometimes govern the Ablative with a Preposition; as, *Immunes ab illis malis sumus*; We are free from these Evils; *Non alienus a Scævola studiis*; Not estranged from the Studies of Scævola.

4. Verbals in *bilis* and *dus*, and all *passive* Participles, commonly govern the Dative; as, *Pax est stabilis omnibus bonis*; Peace is desired by all good Men: *Deus est colendus nobis*; God is to be worshiped by us. But Adjectives in *undus* signifying *active*, govern the Case of their Verbs.

Note. Passive Participles, because immediately derived from passive Verbs have frequently an Ablative with a Preposition; as, *Mors Crassi est desolata a multis*. The Death of Crassus was lamented by many.

## XII. The

## XII. The Dative Case after Verbs.

1. The Person or Thing, to, unto or for which any Thing is, or is done, is the Dative after Verb: as, *Non nascimur nobis ipsis*; We are born for ourselves; i. e. only for ourselves.

2. Verbs signifying to Profit, disprofit, favour and help, Command, obey, resist, or to be angry with, Persuade, flatter, please, and displease, Meet, indulge, } Govern the Dative;

*Fortuna favet fortibus*, Fortune favours the brave.

3. Verbs signifying to

Give, trust, restore, and take away, Compare, threaten and forgive, Promise, pay, shew, and tell. } Govern an Accusative of the Thing and Dative of the Person; as,

*Deus minatus est impiis gravissima Supplicia*; God threatened the wicked with most grievous Punishments.

Note 1. Juvo, adjuvo, lædo, jubeo, admiror, alloquor, invado, impugno, oppugno, offendo, prævenio, govern an Accusative.

2. Verbs of taking away frequently change this Dative into the Ab. with the Prepositions *a* or *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *sub*; as, *Abstulit Librum mihi vel à me*; He took a Book from me. Also Verbs of receiving, asking, removing, and distance, govern an Ablative, with the same Prepositions; as, *Cic. Præclarum à majoribus morem accepimus*. We have received an excellent Custom from our ancestors.

3. Verbs of Comparing have sometimes an Ablative with *cum*, or an Acc. with *ad*; as, *Comparo Virgilium cum Homero*; I compare Virgil with Homer. Also some, as, *tempero, modero, reſeſo, do, ſcribo*, may have either a Dative or Acc. with *ad*.



4. Verbs compounded with these Prepositions, *re, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter, super* govern a Dative of that Word, on which the Force of the Preposition falleth; as, *Nemo sanus seipsum committeret infano*; No Man in his Wits would commit a Sword to a Madman.

Note 1. *To* is, or may be, before the Word, which is the Dative, tho' it is frequently left out in English; as, *edit Pomum Puer*; He gave the Boy, or to the Boy an Apple.

2. *To* in English is not always the Sign of the Dative, but after Verbs of Motion, it is made by the Acc. with *to*; as also after, *provoco, voco, invito, hortor, specio, pertineo, attineo*.

5. Verbs compounded with *satis, bene* and *male*, govern a Dative; as, *Pulchrum est benefacere Republicæ*: 'Tis a commendable Thing to do well to the Commonwealth.

6. Compounds of *Sum*, except *Possun*, govern a Dative; as, *Mali nec prosunt sibi, nec aliis*; Wicked Men neither profit themselves, nor others.

7. *Sum* put for *habeo* governs a Dative; as, *Est mihi Liber*; I have a Book.

Note 1. The English Verb *have* (when it is used as an auxiliary Verb) which may be grammatically made Latin, by *Habeo*, is elegantly made by the third Persons of *Sum*, the grammatical Nom. being made by the Dative, and the Word, which is the Acc. being changed into the Nom.; as, *Ego habeo Librum*; I have a Book, *Est mihi Liber*.

2. *Suppetit* follows the same Construction; and *desunt* the same Construction, is elegantly put for *carere*; as, *Vitæ non desunt ei, cui rem suppetit usus*; He does not

not want Riches, who has the Use of Things; for, Non caret Divitiis, qui habet usum rerum.

8. The grammatical Nominative or Accusative after, Sum, do, dono, duco, habeo, reputo, &c. is elegantly made by the Dative; as, Est mihi Præsidio; He is a Safeguard to me. Hoc Laudi tibi ducis; You reckon this for a Praise to you.

Note 1. Verbs of naming and calling belong to this Rule; they are sometimes made by a Nominative, sometimes by a Genitive; as, Est mihi Nomen Joanni, rather than Joannis, or Joannes; My Name is John.

2. The Datives, mihi, tibi, sibi, illi, are put in some times only for better Sounds Sake; as, Suo sibi humi jugulavit gladio; He slew him with his own Sword.

9. Passive Verbs have after them a Dat. of the Word which signifies the *Agent* or *Doer*; but more commonly an Ab. with the Preposition *a*, *ab*, *abs*; as, Non cernitur ulli; He is not perceived by any one. Virtus diligitur à nobis; Virtue is loved by us.

Note 1. Passive Verbs govern the same Cases with their Actives, except the Acc. which is always governed by some Preposition understood, when it comes after a Passive Verb; as, Sepes depasta *florem* Saliæti apibus suadebit tibi inire Somnum; A Hedge, *fed upon*, flowers i. e. *secundum quoddam*, or *per florem*, as to the Blossom of the Willow, by the Bees, will persuade you to sleep. Virg.

2. Some Neuters and Deponents follow the same Construction; as, Meditata *sunt mihi* omnia incommoda mea; All my Misfortunes have been considered by me. Puer ignavus vapulabit à Præceptore; An idle Boy shall be whipped by the Master.

Impersonal Verbs govern the Dative; as,  
*Nemini peccare*; It is lawful for no Man to

Note 1. The particular Exceptions to this Rule are  
 placed under their respective Cases.

When the English of *Coepi*, *incipio*, *desino*, *debeo*,  
*eo*, and *possum* come before an Impersonal; it is  
 changed into the Infinitive, and they become Impersonal;  
 and the Word which seems to be the Nom. will  
 such a Case as the Infinitive of the Impersonal go-  
 verns; as, *Sacerdotem Iosephum pudere debet*; A Priest  
 ought to be ashamed of Ignorance.

Passives in the third Person sing. from any Actives  
 may be used impersonally; as, *Legitur mihi, à te, à illo,*  
*his*; I read, thou readest, he reads, we read, &c.  
 also Neuters Intransitives; as, *Vivitur ab illis*;  
 they live. This Dat. or Ablative will be the Nom.  
 to the Verb, if it be made by the Active; as, *Ego*  
*lego*; I read.

### XIII. The Dative Case after Interjections.

*Hei* and *Vae* govern a Dative; as, *Hei mihi*;  
 O's me. *Vae mihi misero!* quanta de spe de-  
 cidi; Ah! Wretch that I am! from what great  
 hopes am I fallen.

### OBSERVATIONS on the English Particle *For*.

*For* sometimes after Verbs, signifies the same with  
 as, I did it *for* that End, i. e. *pro*.

When it signifies the Cause why, or the Account  
 on which, it is made by the Ab. or by a Preposition,  
 as, He is pale *for* Fear; *Pallens metu, pro metu, ob*  
*propter metum*. They were put to Death *for* Adultery;  
*Adulterium occisi sunt*. For the Sake of, by causa  
*propter*; as, *Exempli Gratia* 2. *Pro*,



3. *For*, when it signifies instead of, is made by  
as, I will grind *for* you; *Ego pro te molam.*

4. *For*, when it signifies the Scope and End of an  
tion is made by *in* or *ad* and the Acc. as, It was  
for my Punishment; *Repertum est in* or *ad* *Poenas*

5. *For*, before a Substantive followed by an Infinitive  
Mood, is thus made; It is a base Thing *for* Boy  
fight: *Non est puerorum, vel turpe est Pueros, pugnare.*  
Before a Participle of the Present Tense, with or without  
a Substantive after it, thus; You are to be blamed  
*for* sending a Servant to me, who is not fit *for* labour.  
*Culpandus est ob mittendum Servum, vel ob missum*  
*vel qui misisti Servum, qui non aptus est ad laborandum*  
*vel qui non laboret.*

#### XIV. The Accusative Case after Verbs.

1. Active Verbs generally govern the Accu-  
sative or objective Case; as, *Beneficia parant Amici.*  
*Benefits procure Friends.*

2. Verbs of asking, intreating, teaching, warn-  
ing, and clothing, signifying actively, govern  
Accusatives, one of the Person, and another  
the Thing asked, intreated, taught, warned, or  
clothed; as, *Posce Deum Veniam;* Ask Favour of  
God. *Id unum te moneo;* I warn or put you in  
Mind of that one Thing.

3. The Passives of these Verbs, and of others,  
govern an Accusative of the Thing; as, *rogabatur Sententiam;* he was asked his Opinion.

4. Neuter Verbs can only govern an Accu-  
sative of Nouns, which express the same Notion with  
themselves; as, *Vivo vitam;* I live a Life. This  
is sometimes changed into the Ab. as, *Obiit*  
*subitanea morte;* He died a sudden Death.

*Celo* governs two Accusatives in the Active and one in the Passive; as, *Ea ne me celet*; Let him not conceal the Things from me. *Nos non oportuit hoc celatos diu*; We ought not to have been concealed from this so long.

These Impersonals, *Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, govern an Acc. of the Person, with an Infinitive; *Delectat me scribere*; I delight to write.

These Participial Voices, *exosus, perosus, pertosus*, when used with an Active signification, govern an Acc. Case; when used with a passive, a Dative; as, *Exosus est seviriam*; He hates Cruelty: *Exosus est Deo & sanctis*; He is hated by God and the Saints.

These Interjections, *En, ecce, and hem*, govern an Acc. of the Thing, and a Dative of the Person; and sometimes a Nominative; as, *Ecce miserum Hominem*; Behold the miserable Man: *En tibi quatuor Aras*; Behold four Altars for you.

*En* and *Ecce*, when they signify to reproach or to point out, govern only the Acc. as, *En habitum*; What a patched Dress!

## XV. The VOCATIVE Case.

*Heus* and *Ohe*, govern a Vocative; and, also *O, Heu, Proh*; though sometimes a Nom. and Acc. as, *Heu! grande Puer*; Oh! Youth much to be lamented.

*Ah* and *vah*, govern a Voc. and sometimes an Acc. as, *Ah virgo infelix! O unhappy Woman! Vah Infantiam! O Inconstancy!* This Case is always to be used in the first in a Sentence in regular Grammatical construction.

## XVI. The ABLATIVE Case after Nouns.

A Noun which signifies the Instrument, or Means *by* or *with* which; and the Manner *in which* any Thing is done, is the Ablative; as, *Scribo calamo & atramento*; I write with Pen and Ink.

Note 1.

Note 1. The Cause may be known by the Question, *Why? Whereof? &c.* The Manner, by the Question, *How?*—and the Instrument, by the Question, *With?*

2. A Preposition is frequently expressed with Cause and Manner; as, *Pro Gaudio*; for Joy; *Pro Amorem*; for Love, &c.

3. A Noun signifying a Part, or Member of any Thing, any wise affected in that Part, is put in the Ablative; as, *Crine niger*, *Ruber Ore*, *Vellicare Auribus*, &c.

4. *With* when it signifies *together with*, is made by the Ablative; After the Verb *to do*, by *de*; as, *What did you do with the Pen?* *Quid fecisti de Penna?* After *angry*, *with* join, compare, it is usually the Sign of the Dative; *Jungunt dextram dextrae*; They join Hand in Hand *Hand*. After *the same*, it is made by *at* or *qui*; as, *I observe the same Friendship with Pylades and Orestes*. When it signifies Reception or Presence, by *apud*; *He is with me*; *Apud me est*.

5. Adjectives, that signify Diversity, govern with a Preposition; and sometimes a Dative; as, *Ab illo*; One different from him; *Diversus huic*.

6. Words of the Comparative Degree, govern in Ablative when *quam* is left out in Latin; *Nullum Supplicium est gravius publica odio*; Punishment is more grievous than the Hatred of the Public.

7. When one of the Things compared together, exceeds the other by some Measure, Degree, or Difference; that Word which signifies the Measure, Degree, or Difference, is also put in the Ablative; as, *Turres quam murus sunt dens sedibus altiores*; The Towers are higher than the Wall. *Quanto doctior es, tanto geras te submissius*; By how much you are more learned than others, behave yourself so much the more humbly.



Note 1. When *Tan* is expressed in Latin by *quam*,  
 atque, the Noun following it is put in the same Case  
 with the Word to which, in Sense, it is coupled; as,  
*animus est præstantior quam corpus*; The Soul is more  
 excellent than the Body. *Vitat oleum cautius viperino*  
*anguine, or quam viperinum Sanguinem*; He shuns Oil  
 more cautiously than Vipers Blood; Thus also, in Eng-  
 lish, He is greater than I; viz. *am*, not than *me*.

2. *Quam* is elegantly suppressed after these Comparatives,  
 Plus, amplius, minus; as, *Noctem non amplius*  
*quam falle dolo*; Disguise yourself under his Appearance,  
 more than the Space of one Night. Virg.

3. There are some Verbs, such as, to *love* and *bare*,  
 which are sometimes used and to be understood, not  
 positively, but in a sort of comparative Sense, espe-  
 cially in the Bible after the Manner of the Hebrews; as,  
 a Man have two Wives, one *beloved*, and another *ba-*  
*red*, that is less loved; If a Man come to me and *bare*  
 his Father, &c. i. e. in Comparison of me.

4. The Measure of a Thing; as, Length, Breadth,  
 Height, Thickness, and Depth, and the Distance of one  
 thing or Place from another, are frequently put in the  
 Ablative, but more commonly in the Acc. and very  
 seldom in the Genitive; as, *Muri Babylonis fuerunt alti*  
*cento, pedes & lati quinquaginta*; The Walls of Ba-  
 bylon were two hundred Feet high, and fifty Broad. *Fossa*  
*erat alta sex Cubitis*; The Ditch was six Cubits deep.  
*facite latas pedum denum, longas quinquagenum*  
*facite*; Make the Beds in the Garden ten Feet broad and fifty  
 long. *Philadelpia distat centum miliaria vel miliaribus*  
*à Eboraco*; Philadelphia is distant from New-York an  
 hundred Miles.

5. A Noun which signifies the *Price for*, or *with*  
 which any Thing is bought or purchased, is com-  
 monly the Ablative; as, *Perfidi vendunt Patriam*  
*pro*; Perfidious Men sell their Country for Gold.

Note 1. *Tantus*, *quantus*, *plus*, *major*, *minor*, *tantun-*  
*dem*,

dem, quāviscūque, signifying the *Worth* or *Price*, when they have no Substantive joined with them, are put in the Genitive; but when the Substantive is expressed, they are in the Ablative; as, Liberalis non vendit, sua potius quam ceteri; sæpe tamen *minoris*; A liberal Man does not sell for *more* than others; but often for *less*. Quam pretio emisti? For how much did you buy it?

2. Valeo, to be worth, has most commonly the Ablative; and sometimes the Accusative; as, Dicti sunt Denarii, quod denos æris valebant; They were called Denarii, because they were worth ten Pieces of Brass.

10. Nouns signifying the Time *when*, are commonly the Ablative; and those that signify *how long*, the Accusative; as, Quando redivisti? *Hesternâ diē* Quamdiu mansisti? *Decem Hebdomadas* When did you return? *Yesterday*. How long did you tarry? *Ten Weeks*. Sometimes thus: Ceterum modabo in *vel* ad Mensem; I will lend it for *Month*.

11. Dignus, indignus, præditus; also, natus, pregnatus, ortus, cretus, and the like, govern the Ablative; as, Ortus regibus debet prælitum esse *virtute*; He that is sprung from *Kings* ought to be *endowed with Virtue*.

Note 1. Contentus, fretus, captus, extorris, profugus, lætus, superbus, creatus, editus, genitus, follow the Rule.

2. Dignus, indignus, and contentus, have sometimes a Genitive.

12. Opus and Usus, when they signify *Need*, govern an Ablative, and sometimes a Genitive, but always a Dative of the Person expressed or understood; as, Non opus est, (i. e. nobis) *Gloria*, *pater*

ere nescit; There is no Need of a Citizen, who  
ows not how to obey *Ufus est opera sua*. There  
Need of your Assistance. *Nunc Ufus est Viri-*

Now there is Need of Strength.

XIII. The Ablative Case after Verbs.

1. Verbs of abounding and wanting, govern the  
lative, and sometimes the Genitive; as, *Coxere*  
*et omni Vitio, qui paratus est dicere in alterum;*  
ought to be free from every Vice who is rea-  
to speak against his Neighbour. *Gravitas morbi*  
it, ut *Medicinâ exeamus*; The Severity of the  
temper forces us to use Physic.

Note. *Careo* and *egeo* anciently governed the Accusative,  
tio vertunt quia multa egeo; Cato apud Gell.

2. Verbs of filling, emptying, loading, unload-  
g, depriving, robbing, spoiling, freeing, bind-  
g, loosing, and cloathing, govern an Ab. of the  
thing filled with or emptied of, and an Acc of the  
erson or Thing which is filled, loaded, &c. as,  
merant *naves mercibus*; They load the Ships  
ith Wares. *Liberavit nos metu*; He delivered  
from Fear,

3. *Potior*, *fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, and *vescor*, govern  
Ab. but very seldom an Acc. as, *Utere mundo*;  
ake use of the World. *Fruere Deo*; Enjoy God.

Note 1. *Potior*, frequently governs a Genitive; as, we  
ways say, *Potiri rerum*; To have the Supreme Power;  
d not res. or re bus.

Note 2. *Nascor*, *defungor*, *abutor*, *gaudeo*, *communico*,  
tor, *visito*, *sto consto*, *glorior*, *lætor*, *pascor*, *epulor*,  
ollow this Construction.

3. *Dignor*,



3. *Dignior, impertior, impertior*, besides the Ablative of the Thing, have an Acc. of the Person.

4. *Muto* and *commuto*, commonly govern the Acc. of the Thing changed, and an Ab. of that in which it is changed; as, *Mutat quadrata rotunda*. He exchanges square Things for round: But sometimes the contrary.

5. A proper Name of a Town signifying the Place whither, is the Accusative; the Place from which or whence is the Ablative; the Place where or in which, if of the first or second Declension in singular Number, the Genitive; otherwise the Dative, as, *Cæsar Romæ profectus est et venit Genèvæ*. Cæsar left Rome, and came to Geneva. *Horatius operam dedit literis, nunc Athenis nunc Romæ*.

Note 1. The Names of Countries, Provinces, and Appellatives, have a Preposition generally added; *Ibant ad Templum*; They went to the Temple. *Angliâ discedentes, venimus in Pensylvaniam*.

Note 2. *Domus* and *rus*, follow the Construction of proper Names; also these Genitives, *Humi, militiæ, belli*, signifying the Place where, or, in which; as, *Rex revertitur domum*; He is returned home from the Country. *Domi militiæq; una fuimus*; We were both together Home and at War. But *Rus*, in the Acc. Plur. has always *in* before it.

Note 3. The Genitive *Domi*, will have no Adjective to agree with it, but *meæ, tuæ, suæ, nostræ, vestræ, eorû, earû*; as, *Domi meæ*; as, At my House. But when any other Adjective is joined with it, it must be put in the Acc. as, *Vescor domo amplâ*.

4. When the Name of a Town is put in the Genitive, *Urbe* is understood; and therefore we cannot say, *Natus est Romæ, urbis nobilis*, but *urbe nobili*,

5. *When, or at*, when they signify near or about a Place.

put in the Accusative with *ad*; as, *Bellum quod erat ad Trojam*; The War which she carried on at *Virg.*

A Substantive, whether Noun or Pronoun joined with a Participle expressed or understood, when not governed by any other Word, is put in the Ablative absolute; as, *Libertate Patriæ oppressa, Nihil amplius quod speremus*; *The Liberty of Country being oppressed, there is nothing more, which we can hope for.*

Note. When there is no Participle expressed in Latin, *being* is understood; as, *Civitate nondum libera.*

This Case may be made differently in English or Latin by some of these Words, while, seeing, when, if, &c.; *Dum, cum, quando, si, postquam*; as, *the King coming*; When the King came; *Rege veniente*; *cum veniret.*

This Ab. is called *absolute* or independent, because it does not depend on any other Word; for when the Substantive is influenced by any other Word, this Rule does not take Place.

This Case is always the Nom. in English, and is separated from the rest of the Sentence, and has common Words, *being*, or some Participle in *ing*, joined with Words which are put absolute; as

*God from the Mount of Sinai, whose grey Top shall tremble, He descending, will himself in Thunder, Lightning, and loud Trumpet's Sound, ordain them Laws.*

Having before a Participle in English, with a Substantive following it, may be put in the Ablative absolute in Latin with *that Substantive*, if it be made by a finite Participle; but if it be made by a Participle in a Deponent, it will agree with the Substantive being it, and govern the other; as, *James having said these Things, departed. Jacobus his dictis, abiit, or locus habet, abiit.*

*Being* is the proper Sign of this Case when the Participle is not of the Present Tense active; as, *The General being killed*, the Army fled; *Duce occiso*, Exercitus fugit.

**XVIII.** When two Verbs come together without any Nominative Case between them, the latter is put in the Infinitive Mood; as, *Cupio discere* I desire *to learn*.

Note 1. Adjectives, excepting chiefly such as govern a Genitive Case, may have an Infinitive Mood after them; as, *Erat contentus vivere* in peace; He was content *to live* in Peace; *Et erat tum dignus amari*; And he was then *worthy to be loved*.

2. Sometimes an Infinitive follows the helping Verb *am* in English, which is to be turned into Latin by the Participle of the Future in *rus* when it is of the Active Voice; but by the Participle of the Future in *dus* when Passive; as, He is to go; *Profecturus est*. They are to be imitated; *Sunt imitandi*. But these may be made by the Infinitive with *oportet*, *debeo*, &c. especially when Duty is signified.

3. The Infinitive Mood may commonly be resolved into the Subjunctive with *ut*, especially when it signifies *to the End that*, and sometimes by *qui*; or it may in the same Case be changed into a Gerund in *dum*; as, I give you Money *to buy* Books; *Do tibi Pecuniam emere Libros*, may be more elegantly made *ut emas*, or *qua emas Libros*; *ad emendum*. I give you Money *for this End*, that you should buy Books, or *with which* you may buy.

4. The Infinitive Mood is often used absolute or independently of the rest of the Sentence in English, supplying the Place of the Conjunction *that* with the Subjunctive Mood; as, *to proceed*; *to conclude*; that is, *that I may proceed*, &c.

5. This Mood has much of the Nature of a Substantive expressing the Action or Thing itself which the Verb signifies; as, *To be silent*, or *Silence* hurts no Body; *Non nocet nulli*. Boys love Play, or to play; *Pueri cupiunt ludum*, or *ludere*.



## XIX. GERUNDS.

The Participle in *ing* in English with a Preposition before it, and still retaining its Government, answers to the Gerund in Latin; as, Happiness is to be attained *by avoiding* Evil, and *by doing* Good; *by seeking* Peace, and *by pursuing* it.

The Participle may be changed into a Substantive, expressing the Action itself, which the Verb signifies, putting an Article before, and the Preposition *of* after it; as, These are the Rules of Grammar, *by the observing* which, you may avoid Mistakes; instead of *by observing* which,

Gerunds in Latin are used as a Sort of Substantives, sometimes for the Infinitive; and are put as it were respectively in the Genitive, the Dative, or Ablative; Nom. or Acc. as follows:

1. Those Adjectives which govern a Genitive; and such Substantives, as, Amor, Vis, Causa, Gradus, Studium, Tempus, Occasio, Ars, Otium, Potestas, Voluntas, Cupido, Norma, have the Gerund in *di*, after them, rather than the Infinitive; as, *Sum cupidus discendi*; I am *desirous to learn*. *hoc est Tempus legendi*; This is a Time of reading.

2. The Gerund in *do* is used as a Dat. after such Adjectives as signify Usefulness or Fitness; and as Ablative when it denotes the Means whereby a Thing is done; and sometimes it has a Preposition serving the Ablative before it; as, *Charta utilis Scribendo*; Paper is useful for Writing. *Memoria augetur excolendo*; The Memory is improved *by exercising* it. *Pœna absterret a peccando*; Punishment frightens *from sinning*.

The

3. The Gerund in *dum* is used as a Nominative with the Verb *Est* importing Necessity, and it governs a Dat. of the Person expressed or understood upon whom the Necessity lies; as, *Eundum nobis*; We must go. It is used as an Accusative after these Prepositions, *ad, ob, inter, ante, propter*; as, *Promptus ad audiendum*; ready to hear.

Note. Gerunds differ from Substantives chiefly on account of their governing the same Cases with the Verbs.

Gerunds are often elegantly changed into Participles in *du*, called *Gerundial Voices*, and agree with their Substantives like Adjectives; as, *Hoc est Tempus petendi Pacem, petendæ Pacis, &c.* This is Time to seek Peace.

## XX. SUPINES.

1. The Supine in *um* is put after Verbs signifying Motion instead of the Infinitive; as, *Eo cubitum*; I go to Bed.

The Supine in *U* is put after Adjectives, instead of the Infin. passive; as *Hoc est mirabile dictum*; This is wonderful to be told.

Note. They are called Supines, i. e. Negligents, because there is no great Use for them in Language, much as what they do, may be answered by other Words; as, *Eo ut cubem, Causâ cubandi, &c.*

## XXI. CONJUNCTIONS.

1. *These, Et, ac, atque, and*; *Nec, neque, Aut, vel, seu, five, or*; *Quam, than*; *Nisi, thanquam, except*; *Tum, both*; *Tam, so*;

nam, ut, velut, *as*; Quasi, *as if*; have commonly like Cases, Moods, and Tenses, before and after them; as, Petrus et Johannes precabantur et docebant. Peter and John prayed and taught.

2. *Que* and *et*, or, are always added to the End of the Word they govern, which is generally the last; as, Viri et Mulieres; Viri mulieresque, *not* virique mulieres.

3. Autem, vero, *but* Enim, *for*; Quidem, *indeed*. Quoque, *also*; are never the first, but the second or third Word in a Sentence - Igitur, *therefore*, tamen *nevertheless*; seldom the first.

4. Quod, *that*, denotes what is past, and is commonly joined to the Indicative: But, Ut, *that*, denotes what is to come, and is joined to the Subjunctive. *Ut*, and *Quod*, is also used after adeo, ideo, ita, sic, tam, accidit, contingit, &c.

Note. Adverbs and Conjunctions then only require a Subjunctive Mood after them, when they give a Signification of Contingency or Uncertainty to the Verb; as, Ut licet veniat; Altho' he come, or happen to come. Si fueris Romæ; If you shall happen to be at Rome.

Hence 1. These sometimes have an Indicative, and sometimes a Subjunctive, viz. Antequam, cum, *when*, donec, etsi, etiamsi, licet, nisi, posteaquam, postquam, priusquam, quam, quamdiu, quamvis, quanquam, quando, quandoquidem, quia, quippe, qui, quod, *because*, quoad, *as long as*, quoniam, si, *if*, sicut, simul, simulacrum, simul atque, simul ut, si, siquidem, tametsi, ubi, utinque, utpote qui.

2. These are used with a Subjunctive, viz. Cum, *although or seeing*, dummodo, *if so be*, haud secus ac si, O si, *that*, perinde ac si, perinde quasi quin, *but that*, quoad, *thereupon*, si, *although*, tanquam, tanquam si, uti, *that*, inam.

3. These



3. These three, *Dum*, *ut*, *ne*, for *Dum* *cobile*, has an Indicative; as, *Dum ætas tulit*, Ter. But *Dum* *so be*, has a Subjunctive; as, *Dum profim tibi*, Ter.

*Ut* *how*, has an Indicative; as, *Ut vidi, ut perii*! He did I gaze! how was I undone! Virg. But, *Ut* *alibi* or *that*, has a Subjunctive; as, *Ut desint vires*, tam est laudanda Voluntas. Adeone ignarus es ut hæc nescias. Cic. *Ut* is also elegantly put for *ne*, or *ne non*, with Subjunctive after *Timeo*, *metuo*, *vereor*, &c. as, *Metuo ut subflet Hospes*. Ter.

*Ne* *whether or no*, has an Indicative; as, *Cogitavit quid dicat*? But *ne* for *ut non*, or *lest*, has a Subjunctive; as, *Prædico ne facias*. *Timet ne deferat se*. Ter. *Ne* *forbidding*, is joined to the Imp. or Sub. as, *Ne timeas* do not fear; or *ne time*. *Ne* *asking a Question*, is added to the first Word of the Question; as, *Will you read? Vis legere?*

## XXII. PREPOSITIONS.

There are fifty-one Prepositions all used in Apposition; some of which govern an Acc. Case only, some Ab. only, and some both.

These thirty-two Prepositions require an Accusative Case.

*Ad*, to, at, against, after, in order to.

*Adversus*

*Adversum*,

} against, towards, to.

*Ante*, before, above.

*Apud*, at, with one in a Place, near.

*Circa*, about, (round) concerning.

*Circum*, about, (nigh) among

*Circiter*, about (near some Time.)

*Cis*, on this Side, before, without,

*Contra*, against, overagainst, towards.

*Erga*, towards, against, to.

*Extra*, without, beyond, except.

*Infra*, beneath, below.

Inter, between, among.

Intra, within.

Juxta, near, by, hard by, according to.

Ob, for, because of, upon the Account of.

Penes, in the Power or keeping of, with, in.

Per, by, through, by Means of, in.

Pone, behind, after.

Post, after, behind, since.

Praeter, except, besides, contrary to, above.

Prope, near to, nigh, Place or Time.

Propter, for, by Reason of, near, by the Side of.

Secundum, according to, next after.

Secus, by, close by.

Supra, above, over, besides.

Trans, beyond, over, or on the further Side.

Ultra, beyond. further than.

Versus, towards.

Usque, or usque ad, to, as far as.

Quoad, as to, according to.

These fourteen Prepositions govern an Ablative Case.

A,  
Ab,  
Abs, } from, by, after, of, &c.

Absque, without, but for, were it not for.

Coram, before, or in Presence of.

Cum, with, together with.

De, of, about or concerning, from.

E, of, out of, from, after,

Ex, according to.

Palam, with the knowledge of, in Sight of.

Prae, before, in Comparison of, for, through, because of, or out of.

Pro, for, instead of, according to, considering.

Sine, without.

Tenus, up to, as far as.

Tenus

Tenus governs either a Genitive or Ablative Plural but an Ablative singular only

Both Tenus and Versus are set after the Case they govern; so are Penes and Usque sometimes.

Note. *A* is used before Words beginning with a Consonant, *ab* before such as begin with Vowels; *abs* is very seldom used at all, and never before any Letter but *q*, *r*, *s*.

These five Prepositions govern both an Accusative and Ablative; thus,

1. *In* signifying into, unto, towards, upon, or against implying Motion, governs an Acc.

2. *In* signifying within, among, at, or before, implying Being, Rest or Settlement, any where, governs an Ablative.

1. *Sub*, signifying Approach or Nearness of any Time bringing or reducing under the Power of, governs an Accusative.

2. Signifying Resting or Settlement in or near a Place keeping under the Power of, &c. governs an Ablative.

*Subter*, under, governs either Case indifferently.

1. *Super*, signifying Time, upon, aloft, beyond, after, over and above, governs an Acc.

2. *Super*, signifying about or concerning, governs an Ablative.

1. *Clam*, privily or unknown to, governs either Case indifferently; as, *Clam patrem* or *patre*.

Sometimes some Prepositions, especially *in*, are not expressed in Latin, but understood; and the casual Word nevertheless put in the Ablative Case; as *Habeo te Loco Parentis*. I have you in the Place of a Parent.



Note. Some of these Particles are often used, when there is no Noun which they govern, and then they are Prepositions, but Adverbs or Conjunctions, according as they signify; as, *Laudare coram, et vituperare contra, in honestum*; To commend a Man to his Face, and reproach him behind his Back is base.

Note 2. The Preposition *in* or *on* is often understood in English before Nouns expressing Time; as, This Day; next Month; last Year; that is, *on this Day, in next month, &c.*

3. Most Prepositions originally denote the Relation of Place, and have been thence transferred to denote Similitude of other Relations. Thus for Instance,

**ABOVE**, chiefly relates to Place, and answers to below or beneath; as, His Chamber is above mine; and in Allusion to this, it hath also divers other Applications; as,

1. It denotes being higher in greatness, Excellency, or any Degree of Honour, &c. as, Cæsar could not abide to have any *above* him, i. e. in Power, &c. He is *above* him in Learning.

2. *Above* signifies *beyond*, or *more than*; as, *above* his length, i. e. beyond. He minded none of those *above* the rest, i. e. more than the rest.

3. It denotes *more or longer than*; as, He fought *above* 10 Hours, i. e. more or longer than, &c.

4. It denotes *besides*; as, Over and *above* these evils, there was, &c. i. e. besides.

Obs. *Am*, round about, *Dis*, asunder, *Re*, again, *se* aside apart, *Con* together, are called inseparable Prepositions, because they are never used but in Composition.

There are many such in English; as, *a, be, con, mis*, &c. Thus, abide, bedeck, conjoin, mistake, &c. To these may be added a great Number, which are derived from Latin; as, Concord, Access, &c. So also from the Greek; as,

1. Which signifies Privation or not; as, anonymous, without a Name; Anarchy, without Government.

R

Amphi,

Amphi, signifies on every side ; as, Amphibious.  
 Anti, signifies against ; as, Antagonist, one that  
 against you ; Antichrist, one that is in opposition  
 Christ.

Hyper, over or above ; as, Hyperbole.

Hypo, under : as, Hypocrite, one who acts under  
 Mask.

Meta, is the same as trans, i. e. beyond ; or else d  
 notes the changing of one Thing into another ; as, M  
 taphor, Metamorphosis, i. e. Transformation.

Peri ; as, Periphery, Circumference.

Syn, with or together ; as, Synod, that is, Convoc  
 tion ; Syntax ; that is, Construction.

The Prepositions do often change their last Letter in  
 the Consonant that the Word begins with ; as, in *con*  
 is changed into *l*, as, Colloquy ; and sometimes the  
 lose a Letter, as in Coeternal, where *n* is left out, &

### XXIII. COMPOUNDS.

Verbs compounded with Prepositions, frequen  
 ly govern the *Case* of the *Preposition*, with whi  
 they are compounded, when the Force of the P  
 position falls on any particular Noun ; as, Præter  
*té* ; I pass by you. Eripuit illud *flammâ* ;  
 snatched it from the Fire.

Note. Sometimes the Preposition is elegantly repe  
 ed ; as, Advocabo amicos *ad* hanc rem ; I will call  
 Friends to this affair.

### XXIV. DERIVATIVES.

Participles, Gerunds, Supines and Adverbs, g  
 vern the Cases of the Words they are derived from  
 as, Venit obviam mihi ; He met me. Deus est  
 lendus nobis ; God is to be worshiped by us.

But Participials follow the Construction of Nouns, and therefore govern a Genitive; as, *Mercator est inexper-*  
*is Belli*; A Merchant is not acquainted *with War*.

**XXV. The Question and Answer are usually**  
put in the same Case of a Noun, and Tense of a  
Verb; as, *Quem librum legis?* *Virgilium*: What  
book do you read? *Ans. Virgil*.

Note. The Word which answers a Question, does  
not depend upon the Interogative, but upon that Word  
which is understood in the Answer to make the Sense  
complete; as, *Quis est colendus?* *Deus (est colendus)*  
*quo cares?* *Libro (careo.)*

### GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

A **FIGURE** is the Change of a Word, or Sentence  
from its common Form.

The principal Figures of Grammar are three; *Meta-*  
*plasmus*, *Enallage* and *Ellipsis*.

**I. METAPLASMUS** is the Transformation of a Word  
from the common Form of Orthography; which may be  
done nine Ways, viz. by Prothesis, Aphæresis, Syncope,  
Epenthesis, Apocope, Paragoge, Metathesis, Antithe-

sis, and Tmesis; thus,  
Prothesis adds some Letters to the Beginning of a  
Word; as, *gnatus*, for *Natus*.

Aphæresis takes some Letters from the Beginning of a  
Word; as, *Ruit*, for *Irruit*.

Syncope leaves out some Letters in the Middle of a  
Word; as, *Abiit*, for *Abivit*; *Amaſti*, for *Amaviſti*.

Epenthesis inserts some Letters in the Middle of a  
Word; as, *Relligio*, for *Religio*.

Apocope cuts off some Letters from the End of a Word;  
as, *Peculi*, for *Peculii*.

Paragoge adds some Letters to the End of a Word;  
as, *Dicier*, for *Dici*.

Metathesis changes the Order of the Letters.

*Antithesis*



**Antithesis** puts one Letter for another; as, *illi, illi*.

**Time** divides a Word; as, *Quamcumque, for* *cun. que nam.*

**II. ENALLAGE** is the Interchanging of one Word for another contrary to the common Form of Etymology; as, When,

A Substantive is put for an Adjective; *Nemo Homo*. An Adjective for a Substantive; as, *Pauper, for pauper*. *Homo; Medentes, for Medici.* A Verb for a Substantive; *Scire tuum nihil est, for Scientia tua nihil est.* An Adverb for a Substantive; as, *Satis vini bibitur.* A Sentence for a Substantive; as, *In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum.* A Verb for an Adverb; as, *Amabo.* An Adverb for a Preposition; as, *Proxime Meos.* A Preposition for an Adverb; as, *Coram, quæritis, adsum, &c*

**III. ELLIPSIS** is the elegant Omission of some Word or Words in a Sentence, contrary to the common Form of Syntax; as, *Ubi ad Dianæ veneris; where Temple for Elegancy's Sake, is left out.* Thus we say in English, *I'll go to Mr. Green's by St. Paul's, for I'll go to Mr. Green's House by St. Paul's Church.*

**Obf.** To this one Figure **ELLIPSIS**, may be reduced these Eight, which Grammarians have instituted thus.

1. **APPOSITIO.** *As, Rex Georgius.* By Ellipsis, *Rex qui est or ens Georgius.*

2. **EVOCATIO.** *As, Ego pauper laboro, tu dives ludis.* Ellipsis, *Ego qui sum pauper laboro, tu qui es dives ludis.*

3. **SYLLEPSIS.** *As, Ego et tu legimus; Tu & Pater & Mater, estis pii; Charta & Atramentum sunt necessaria.* Ellip. *Ego & tu, nos duo, legimus: Tu et Pater & Mater, vos tres estis pii Homines: Charta & Atramentum sunt necessaria, Instrumenta.*

4. **PROLEPSIS.** *As, Dux aquilæ volaverunt, hæc orientis*

orientē, illa ab occidente. Ellip. Dulcē aquilā volatē-  
runt, hæc volavit ab oriente, illa volavit ab occidente.

5. ZEUGMA. *As*, Ego & tu studes; Ego sicut scenum  
arui; Hic illius arma, hic currus fuit. Ellip. Ego studeo  
& tu studes; Ego arui sicut scenum aruit; Hic illius ar-  
ma fuerunt, hic currus fuit.

6. SYNTHESIS, or SYNESIS. *As*, Gens armati erant.  
Pars merfi tenere Ratem. Centauro in magna. Ellip.  
Gens hominum, illi armati erant. Pars hominum qui  
merfi tenere ratem. Centauro in magna *Navi*.

7. ANTIPTOSIS. *As*, Urbem quam statuo vestra  
est. Ellip. Urbs est vestra, quam Urbem statuo.

8. SYNECDOCHE, or, more properly, an HELLEN-  
ISM. *As*, Æthiops albus dentes. Saucius frontem.  
Læta lætus. Ellip. Æthiops albus secundum dentes.  
Saucius circa frontem. Lætus quatenus ad Cætera.

Note. The rest, namely, a Pleonasm, Solecism, Bar-  
barism, Archaism, are Figures of Observation rather  
than Use.

1. A Pleonasm, is an Abounding beyond what is ne-  
cessary in a Sentence; as, Magis beator. Virg. Bellum  
quo bello obiit. Cæs. Id propter ea nunc venientem se-  
nor. Ter. Apis si sævit maxime pessima est. Columel.  
pugnā pugnare, Vitam vivere, Oculis vidi, &c.

2. A Solecism is an Error in Syntax, that cannot be  
defended by Rule or Authority; as, if any should say,  
Da me panem, *for* Da mihi panem.

3. A Barbarism is the using of an improper or barbar-  
ous Word for a Proper or Classical one; as, Instructio  
or Institutio. Incurabilis *for* Insanabilis, &c.

4. An Archaism is when a Word is used as, anciently,  
when the Roman Language was in it's Infancy; as, in  
the Declensions.

1. Pater-Familias. 2. G. Menandru. 3. D.  
Morte. 4. G. Anuis. 5. G. Progenii. 1. G.  
Maternali.

Materiali. 2. D. Populoi. 3. G. Epigramator  
4. D. Metu. 5. D. Facie.

In the Conjugations.

Scibam *for* Sciebam. Acceſſi *for* Acceſſiſti.

Scibo, Reddibo, *for* Sciam Reddam.

Dicem *for* Dicam. Comedim *for* comedam.

Faxo, faxim, faxem, *for* Fecero, facerem, feciſſem.

Prohibeſſim, Prohibuerim.

Prohibeſſem, Prohibuiſſem.

Prohibeſſo, Prohibuero.

Prohibeſſe, Prohibuſſe

Prohibeſſe, Prohibiturum eſſe, &c.

IV. PROSODY, the fourth Part of Grammar

**P**ROSODY is that Part of Grammar, which teaches the Pronunciation of Words, or the Accent and Quantity of Syllables.

By Accent the Ancients meant an Elevation or Depression of the Voice on particular Syllables: Of the the Greeks had three, the *Acute* (´) which marked the Elevation of Voice; the *Grave* (`) which denoted its Depression; and the *Circumflex* (˘) which in some Sense seems to have expreſſed both on the ſame Syllable. But theſe are now uſed in Latin Books for different Purpoſes, viz. to clear an Ambiguity: as, Cécidit, he fell. Cecidit, he hath beaten: The *Grave* to diſtinguiſh Adverbs, or rather other Parts of Speech uſed adverbially, as, ſultè, unà, ſeriò, licèt: The *Circumflex* to diſtinguiſh the Ablative of the firſt Declenſion, the Genitive of the fourth, and contracted Words; as, Muſâ, manûs, mâſti.

The Engliſh have two Accents, the *Acute* and *Grave*, both which are ſometimes uſed in one and the ſame Word; as, Faſcination; Fermentation. Theſe are not ordinarily marked in Writing or Printing, yet they are eaſily known and diſtinguiſhed by a good Ear, as the Words are pronounced.



Primitive Words of two Syllables have but one Accent, which is most commonly placed on the first; unless they be of French Derivation, in which it is placed on the second; as, Pronounce.

Compound Words, especially of two Syllables, are often accented on both; as, Foot-stool; Earth-quake. Poly-syllables may have sundry Accents.

To read with false Quantity is very disgustful to all good Judges, and is a great Blemish to the Education of youth, and often renders them the Objects of Ridicule. They should therefore be particularly careful to observe the proper Quantity of Words even in Prose; as, 1. The increase of Nouns in the Gen.; as, Radicis, Sanguinis; and of the Conjugations; as, Amamus, monemus, regimus, audimus. 2. That all Monosyllables are long; as, Mél, Vir, &c. 3. That in all Dissyllables the first is long; as, Bonus, méus. 4. That in all Polytyllables, the Penultima, which is long by Nature or Position, is long; as, Probléma, libértas: But if the Penultima is short or common, then the Antepenultima is long; as, óminus, mulieris, fúnebris, dèlubrum, mediocris. Except the Compounds from Facio; as, Benefácit, cale-scit.

5. Greek Words latinized, retain their Accent; as, Idólum, Idololàtria, Metonymía, Nicodémus, Demócus, Berenice, Andronicus, Thessalonica, Paracletus, Aristobólus, Peloponnesus, Oeconómus, Lycàon, Briseis, Meneláus. 6. That *i* and *e*, from the Greek Diphthong, are long; as, Darius, Ionia, Energia, Elegia, Samaria, Alexandria, Platéa, Medea, Muséum, Epicureus, Cæneas. Notwithstanding Custom often breaks through these two last Rules; as, Andreas, Philosophía, Autógraphia, Etymología, Profódia, Urània, Academia, Symphonia; and it is thought safest to Pronounce a Word latinized according to Latin Accent, when the proper and genuine Accent is not known.

7. Diminutives in *ulus*, *a*, *um*, and *ulus*, *a*, *um*, have the Penultima short; as, Urceulus, puellula, aureolus, crasmiolus. 8. Verbals in *itus* from the fourth Conjugation,

on,

on, have the Penultima long; as, *Auditus*. Except Verbs from *eo*; as, *Transitus*, *exitus*, *interitus*. Vocatives in *i*, from Nouns in *ius*, have the Penultima long; as, *Pompèi*, *Mercùri*, *Virgili*. Cum aliis.

Words are pronounced in English Poetry as they are in Prose, if we except a small Variation, which takes Place on Account of the Pauses; and the last Syllable may sometimes be a little varied so as to make it correspond with the Rhyme, which good Poets commonly avoid.

Though the Poets take their Words from common Use and are not to be looked on as making a Standard for Quantity and Accent any more than for Style; Yet their Verses are easily committed to Memory, and retained and repeated from Age to Age, while Prose Authors are forgotten, the Bards are the Repositories where the Pronunciation of Words is best preserved. And thus they transmit the Memory both of Words and Action which without them would have been lost to Posterity.

All human Fame is by the Muses spread,  
For Heirs consume the Riches of the Dead;  
The great *ATRIDAÆ* this alone enjoy,  
While all the Wealth and Spoil of plundered Troy  
That 'scaped the raging Flame, or whelming Wave  
Lies buried in Oblivion's greedy Grave.

To understand the Quantity of Syllables in Poetry the following Rules may suffice.

I. A Vowel before two single Consonants, or one double, is long by Position: Except that short Vowel before a Mute, when *L* or *R* immediately follows, is varied in Poetry, but in Prose short; as,

*Et primo volùcri similis, mox vero volùcris.*

II. On

II. One Vowel before another in Latin is short; but in Greek is varied, tho' mostly long.

O Melibœe, Deus nobis hæc otia fecit.

N. B. *H* has not the Force of a Letter in Latin, tho' often obtains it in English; as, Help, Hold, &c.

Except. 1. Genitives in *ius* have *i* common, only in *serius* it is always short, in *alius* long.

Alter in alterius jactantes lumina vultum.

Ex. 2. *E* after *I* in the Gen. and Dative of the fifth declension is long.

Ventum erat ad vestæ quarta jam parte Disi.

Ex. 3. *I* in the Tenses of *esse*, where *r* does not follow, is long.

Fiet enim subito, fus horridus atraque Tygris.

III. Every contracted Syllable and every Diphthong in Latin is always long; only *Præ* in Composition, when a Vowel follows, is short.

Stipitibus duris agitur, sudibusve præstis.

IV. Derivatives retain the Quantity of their primitives.

Ex. Mobilis, fomes, laterna, regula, rex, sedes, juvenis, junior, tegula, humanus, vox, vomer, and others, which tho' derived from short Words, have their first Syllable long. On the contrary, Arena, arista, dicax, fragor, fragilis, desertus, sopor, lucerna, tenui, posui, and ducis from dux, tho' derived from long Words, have their first Syllable short.

V. Compound Words retain the Quantity of their Simples.

Ex. Pronuba, innuba, from nubo; and deiero, pejero, from juro.

VI. The



**VI. The Prepositions, *A, e, de, se, di*, are long.**

Ex. *Di* in dirimo and disertus.

Nes posse Italia Teucrorum avertere regem.

**VII. *Re* is short; but *refert*, from *res* is long.** Also *pro* in Latin is long; but *profugus*, *procell*, *protervus*, *pronepos*, *profanus*, *profiteor*, *profundus*, *professor*, *propero*, *profari*, *profecta*, *profugio*, *propheta*, *propino*, and *propago*, a *Noun* have *pro* short. In *procurro*, *propello*, *propulsus*, *profundo*, and *propago*, a *Verb*, *pro* is doubtful. All other Prepositions are short, if not long by Position.

Est numerus: neque enim numero comprehendere esse

**VIII. Every preterperfect Tense of two Syllables, and consequently every Supine of two Syllables, has the first long.**

Ex. *Steti*, *dedi*, *seidi*, *bibi*, *tuli*, and *fidi* from *fin-*  
*ditum* from *cio*, *litum*, *situm*, *quitum*, *itum*, *fatum*, *o-*  
*tum*, *ratum*, and *rutum*.

Explicuit legio, et campo statit agmen aperto.  
Me, me: adsum qui feci; in me convertite ferrum.

**IX. When the preterperfect Tense doubles the first Syllable, both are short, if the latter be long by Position.**

Ex. *Cecidi* from *cedo*, and *popedi* from *podo*,  
Inter cunctantes cecidit moribunda ministros.  
Ebraius ac petulans quinullum forte cecidit.

Obs. When the Quantity of the first Syllable of Words cannot be determined by the foregoing Rule, we must depend on the Authority of the Poets, which is more certain than any Rule whatever.

The Quantity of MIDDLE Syllables may be known, partly by the foregoing Rules, and partly from the Manner in which the Conjugations and Declensions increase; which has been described already in Etymology, and to which the Learner is referred. But *e* is short in *D* and *Compounds*.

When a Verb has a Syllable more in any Part of than in the second Person of the present Indicative active, it is said to increase. Thus, *Audimus*, having a Syllable more than *audis*, increases. The penult Syllable is the Increase in such a Case; but *audiveramus* increases three Syllables, *i-vera*.

X. *I*, and *U*, the Increase of Verbs are short: except the first Increase of the fourth Conjugation; as, *audimus* and *velimus*, *nolimus*, *sinus*, in which *i* is long. *Dirite*, *Pierides*: *Non omnia possumus omnes*.

XI. *L*, *E*, and *O*, in Words derived from such the Greek as have a small *o*, in the first Part of Compound, are short.

Ex. In *bigis*, *quadrigris*, *siquidem*, *scilicet*, *siquando*, *idem*, *meridies*, *quotidie*, *tantidem*, and a few others.

*Secula carophorum Cæsara si priscæ talissent.*

*Quadrifidasque fudes, et acuto robore vallos.*

*Flammærunque Globos liquifactaque volvere saxa.*

XII. Adjectives in *inus* and *osus*, are long:

Ex. *Craftinus*, *pristinus*, *diutinus*, *serotinus*, *oleaginus*, *ginus*, *carbasius*, *cedrinus* and such as signify the matter of which any Thing is made; as, *Christallinus*, *laminatinus*.

Obs. When a Noun has a Syllable more in the Genitive, than in the Nom. Case singular, it is said to increase; and if it has a Syllable more in the plural Cases, than in the Gen. singular, it is then a plural Increase. In both the penult Syllable is the Increase.

XIII. The Increase of the second Declension is always short.

Ex. Iberi Celtiberi.

Tela manu miseri jactabant irrita Teucri.

XIV. *A*, and *o*, the Increase of the third Declension are long.

Pars mihi pacis erit dextram tetigisse tyranni.

Ex. 1. Masculines in *al* and *ar*, and *uas*, *uadis*, *manas* *lar*, *jubar*; and Greek Nouns making *adis* in the Gen. or ending in *a*, make *atis*.

Ex. 2. Neuters that make *oris*, in the Gen. and proper Names; as, *Hector*: but *os*, *oris*, a Mouth, is long. Shorten *arbor*, *impos*, *compos*, *bos*, *lepus*; and Words in *obs* and *ops*. But *Cecrops*, *Hydrops*, and *Cyclops* are long.

*Hectoris* *Andromache*, *Pyrrhin'* *connubia* *servas*  
*Tela* *reponuntur* *manibus* *fabricata* *Cyclopum*.

XV. *E*, *i*, and *u*, increasing in the third Declension, are short.

*Barbarus* *has* *fegetes*? *en* *quo* *discordia* *cives*.

*Define* *Tydidem* *vultuque* *et* *murmure* *nobis*.

Ex. 1. The Increase of *Hæres*, *locuples*, *mercor*, *quies*, *seps*, *rex*, *lex*, *plebs*, *magnes*, *lebes*, *cures*, *halcyren*, and Words that make *enis* in the Genitive.

*Huic* *aliud* *mercedis* *erit*; *simul* *incipit* *ipse*.

Ex. 2. Greek Nouns making *inis* and *ynis*, in the Genitive; and *lis*, *dis*, *famnis*, *psophis*, *gryps*, *quiris*, *vibex* and several Nouns in *ix* and *ix*.

*Orpheus* *in* *Sylvis*, *inter* *Delpinas* *Arion*.

*Jungentur* *jam* *Gryphes* *equis*, *ævoque* *sequenti*.

Ex. 3. Nouns in *us*, that make *uris*, *udis*, and *utis*, in the Genitive; But the Increase of *intercus*, *peccator*, *augur*, *murmur*, *furfur*, *vultur*, are short: of *Fur*, *lux*, *pollux*, long.

*Una* *salus* *victis* *nullam* *sperare* *salutem*.

*Dat* *lucem*, *et* *late* *circum* *loca* *fulphure* *fumant*.



## FINAL SYLLABLES.

XVI. *A*, in the end of Words is long:

But all Cases ending in *a*, except the Ablative and Greek Vocative, are short; also shorten *sia*, *ita*, *quia*, *postea*, and *puta*, an Adverb. Numerals in *ginta* have *a* common.

Arcades, *invidia* rumpantur ut *ilia* Codro.

XVII. *E*, in the End of Words is short :

Except Words in *e*, of the first and fifth Declensions; and Adverbs from Adjectives of the second Declension; and the second Persons sing. of the imperative Mood of the second Conjugation; as, *Docé*: Also *ohe*, *cete*, *tempe*, *ferme*, *fere*, *fame*; and all Monosyllables are long: But Enclitics and Syllabics, with *bene*, *male*, and *image*, are short.

*Incipe*, si quid habes, et me fecere poetam.

*Castæ favæ* Lucina; tuus jam regnat Apollo.

XVIII. *I*, and *u*, in the End of Words are long :

Except the Greek Dative, and Vocative of the third Declension; as, *Palladi*, *Phylli*; But *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, *ubi*, and *cui*, are varied: *Nisi* and *quasi*, always short.

*Phyllidis adventu nostræ* nemus omne virebit.

*Tu mihi*, seu magni superas jam saxa Timavi.

*Te Corydon*, O *Alexi* trahit sua quemque voluptas.

XIX. *O*, in the End of Words is common :

But in the Dative and Ablative of the second Declension, it is still long; as also in Adverbs derived from Adjectives, and *ergo* for *causa*: But *sedulo*, *crebro* and *sero*, are common; *cito*, *modo*, and *quomodo*, short; so are *ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, for the most Part.

Monosyllables in *O*, are always long, and Greeks in *O*, that make *ui* in the Genitive. Causando

Causanda nostros in longum ducis amores.  
 Tu modo nascenti puer, quo ferrea primum.  
 O Lux Dardaniz, spes O fidissima Teucrum.

**XX. B, d, l, r, t, in the End of Words are short.**

Except *sal, sol, nil*; and Hebrew Names; as, *Daniel*, and Nouns in *en*, that have *eris* long in the Genitive. And *aer, æther, cur, fur, lar, Nar, far, ver, and par*, with its Compounds.

Implicat et miseros morfu depascitur artus.  
 Ducite ab urbe domum mea carmina, ducite Daphni.  
 Daphni, quid antiquos signorum suspicis ortus.  
 Sulphurea Nar albus aqua, fontesque velini.

**XXI. C, and n, in the End of Words are long.**  
 Except *lac, nec, donec*, which are short; and the Pronoun *hic* and *hac*, (not in the Ablative) and *fac*, which are varied; Except also *en*, when it makes *inis* short in the Genitive; Greeks in *on* from the short O; Accusatives in *in*, or *yn*; also in *an* when the Nominative in *a*, is short; as, *Medean*. Shorten also *forsitan, forsan, in, tamen, an*, and such as end in *n*, by Apostrophe, as, *viden' ego*.

Si oculos, sic ille manus sic ora ferebat.  
 Usque adeo turbatur agnis; an ipse capellas.  
 Forsitan et Priami fuerint quæ fata requiras.  
 Sæpe etiam immensum cœlo venit agmen aquarum.

**XXII. As, es, os, in the End of Words are long.**

Ipsi per medias acies insignibus alis.  
 Ure foco cancras altæ neu crede paludi.

**Ex. 1.** *Anas* and Greek Nouns in *as*, that make *adis* in the Genitive; and the Greek Accusative of the third Declension; as, *Rhetoras*, which have *as* short.  
 Quatuor Autumnos Pleias orta facit.

Ex. 2. Neuters, and Greek Plurals of the third Declension; as, Delphines; and Nouns in *is*, increasing short in the Genitive: But *Paries*, *aries*, *abies*, *Ceres*, *apes*, with its Compounds, are long. *Penes*, and *is* from *um*, with its Compounds are short; but *is*, from *is* is long.

*scribendi Cacæthæ et ægri in corde senescit.*

*Maiaes, indigno cum Gallus amore periret.*

*Populus in fluviiis, abies in montibus altis.*

3. *Os*, *offis*, *compos*, *impos*, and Greeks that have *is* in the Genitive; as, *Tydeos*: And all Nouns in *is*, of the second Declension, are short.

*Paphos Idaliūque tibi, sunt alta Cythera.*

**XXV. Is and us in the End of Words, are short.** *Luctus ubique Pavor et plurima mortis imago.*

Except. 1. Such Cases in the plural as end in *is*; and Nouns singular in *is*, whose Genitives encrease long in *is*, *itis*, and *entis*; and the second Person singular of Verbs, whose second Person plural has the penult long in *itis*; as, *audis*: Also, *Ghis* is long, and *wis*, both Noun and Verb.

*Consequimur cuncti, et densis incurrimus armis.*

*Hac ibat Simois, hic est figæia tellus.*

*Expectate venis, ut te post multa tuorum.*

2. Monosyllables in *is*, and Greek Genitives; as, *Didas* and the Genitive singular, the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural, of the fourth Declension: Also the Nominative singular of Nouns that encrease long in *aris*, *utis* or *untis*, in the Genitive, or that make the Vocative in *u*.

Of Making and Scanning ADONIC, HEXAMETER, and PENTAMETER Verses.

A Foot consists of two or more Syllables, and a Verse consists



consists of several Feet properly joined together. Some Feet have two Syllables; as,

A Spondee, Virtus — —	and others three, as,
Trochee, Pane — ˘	A Dactyl. Scribere — ˘ ˘
Iambus, Amans ˘ —	Tribacys, Domine ˘ ˘ ˘
	Anapæst, Pietas ˘ ˘ —

I. An ADONIC Verse consists of two Feet; the first a Dactyl and the other a Spondee; as,—

Terruit | urbem. Hor.

Tegmine | lagi. Virg.

II. HEXAMETER Verse has something grave and majestic in it, and is therefore used in Epic or Heroic Poems, which represent the great Actions of Heroes as also, in Eclogues, Georgicks, Pastorals, Satires, &c.

An Hexameter consists of six Feet; the first four which may be either Dactyls or Spondees, but the fifth Foot must be a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee; as,

Tityrē | tū patū | læ recū | bāns sūb | tēgmin  
lagi. Virg.

When Lines consist chiefly of Dactyls they serve to describe something that is light and gay; as,

Radit iter liquidum, celeres neque commovet alas.

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum.

Note. When a Spondee is in the fifth Place, which seldom happens, 'tis called a *Spondiac Verse*, and is used on particular Occasions, to add Gravity to a Line; as

Chara Deūm Soboles magnum Jovis incrementum.

Virg. Ecl.

III. A PENTAMETER consists of five Feet; two Feet either Dactyls or Spondees, and a long Syllable in the first Part; and two Feet, both Dactyls, and a long Syllable in the latter Part; as,

Nrī mīhī | rēscī | bās | āttāmēn | īpsē vē |  
I 2 (5) I 2

This being used alternately with the Hexameter, renders it more simple and familiar.

This Sort of Verse is used in Epistles, Elegies, mourn-  
ful Subjects, &c.

The describing the Feet of a Verse in this Manner,  
called SCANNING.

In SCANNING, a Vowel at the End of a Word is  
cut off by Synalæpha, if the next Word begins with a  
Vowel, Diphthong, or *h*. So also is *am, em, im, om, um,*  
by Ellipsis; as in this Verse:

Monstrum horrendum informe ingens cui lumen ademp-  
tum.

Thus, Monstr' hor- | rend' in- | form' in-gens cui |  
lumen ad-emptum.

ELISION contributes very much to the Beauty of  
Verse, serving equally to make the Numbers smooth,  
flowing, rough, or majestic, according to the Difference  
of the Objects which are described.

As the Letter *h*, in Verse, is not considered as a Let-  
ter, but only a Note of rough Breathing; so it makes no  
position, and hinders no Elision.

Note. Synalæpha is sometimes dispensed with,—as,  
Ter sunt conatī imponere Peliō Ossam.

Obs. 1. LICENTIA POETICA, is the Liberty  
Poets take of differing from the common Rule of Quan-  
tity; as,

1. In SYNÆRESIS, where two Syllables are contrac-  
ted into one, in such Words as these, Dii, cui, huic,  
idem, deinde, &c. as, Corpora Di cæptis, nam vos  
contastis & illas. Di for Dii.

2. In DIÆRESIS, where one Syllable is made two;  
Debuerant fusos evoluisse meos, Ovid.—Evoluisse  
revolvisse.

3. In CÆSURA, where a short Syllable, cut off from  
a Word, after a Foot is completed, is made long; as,  
Omnia vincit Amor, & nos cedamus Amori.

Virg. Ec. 10. 69.

4. In

4. In SYSTOLE, which makes a long Syllable short  
as,

*Obstupui steteruntque Comæ.*---Virg. *Æn.* 2. v. 77

5. In DIASTOLE, which makes a short Syllable long; as,

*Atque hic Priamidem laniatum corpore toto.*

Virg. *Æn.* 2. v. 49

But neither Systole, Diastole, nor Cæsura, are to be imitated.

*Obs.* 2. The last Syllable of every Verse is counted common; as,

*Nos Patriæ fines & dulcia linquimus arva.*

Of Making and Scanning ASCLEPIAD, SAPPHIC, PHALEUCIAN, and IAMBIC Verses.

Odes and Songs commonly consisted of these Feet, they require shorter Verses, and often seem to bound a coaper like the Music and Dancing with which they were attended.

I. An ANASCLEPIAD Verse consists of a Spondee, Dactyl, a long Syllable, and then two Dactyls; as,

*Mecæ- | nas ata- | vis | edite | regibus.* Hor.

II. A SAPPHIC consists of a Trochee, a Spondee, Dactyl, and then two Trochees. After three of which Verses, is generally put an Adonic; thus,

*Jam sa- | tis ter- | ris nivis | atque | duræ*

*Grandinis misit pater, et rubente,*

*Dextera sacras jaculatus arces.*

*Terruit | urbem.* Hor.

III. A PHALEUCIAN Verse consists of eleven Syllables in this Order; a Spondee, a Dactyl, and then three Trochees; as,

*Hic est | quem legis | ille | quem re | quiris.*

*Toto | notus in | orbe | Marti- | alis.* Martial

IV. An IAMBIC Verse is either Pure or Mixt.

IV.



1. A pure Iambic consists only of Iambuses ; as,

aus | et ip- | sã Rõ- | mã n- | ribus | ruit Hor.

1. A mixt Iambic, in the odd Places, (that is, in the 1st, 3d, and 5th) frequently admits a Spondee, or some Foot equal to it ; but in the even, (2d, and 4th) Places, only an Iambus, or some Foot equal to it ; and is either Dimeter of four Feet, or Trimeter of six ; as,

Trim. At o- | deo | rum quis | quis in | calo | regis

Dimeter. Terras | et hu- | manum | genus. Hor.

Note. As a Dramatic Poem has neither the Majesty of the Epic, nor the Impetuosity of Hymns and Odes, it suits best with the Iambic Foot, which gives Harmony enough to Verses to raise them above Prose, and leaves them, notwithstanding, Simplicity enough to suit with the familiar Discourse of Actors introduced upon the Stage. Scanning Verses must be learned by Practice ; for which Stirling's Virgil, in Conjunction with these Rules, will be an excellent Help.

There is a plain, common, and ordinary Numerosity in proper Poetry, which renders the Verse smooth and flowing, carefully throwing out whatever may offend the Ear by a rough and disagreeable Sound, and by the Mixture of different Numbers and Measures, forms that pleasing Harmony, diffused throughout the Body of the Poem. Besides this, there are certain particular Pauses both in English and Latin of great Significancy, which prevent the ill Effect which uniform Cadences must necessarily produce on the Ear by a perpetual Monotony.

According to the first of these Observations, we have in Heroic Verse in English alternately a long and short, or an accented and unaccented Syllable regularly following each other, with a Pause in the Middle, and a gentle Cadence at the End of each Line.

But according to the second, these are properly diversified all which can be more easily learned by a poetical Genius, and a good Ear, from a careful reading of the best Poets, viz. Homer, Virgil, Milton, Dryden, Pope, Thomson, &c. &c. than by any Number of Rules.

THE

# THE APPENDIX

## GRAMMATICAL TERMS *explained*

**ABLATIVES ABSOLUTE**, are those Ablatives which are said to be governed by no other Word; as, Imperante Augusto natus est Christus.

An **ABSTRACT NOUN**, is a Substantive derived from an Adjective, and signifying the same Quality with that Adjective in general, without Regard to the Thing in which the Quality is; as, Bonitas, Goodness from bonus, good: Dulcedo, Sweetness; from dulcis, sweet.

**ADJECTIONS**, are Syllables added to Words to render them emphatical, and are these following met, te, ce, pse, pte, cine, nam, dam, dum, quave, pote, cunque, and piam.

**AMPLIFICATIVES**, are such Words as magnify the Signification of their Primitives; as, biba given to drink; from bibo, to drink: nasutus, grownosed; from Nasus, a Nose.

**ANTECEDENT**, is a Word coming before Relative, and may be again repeated with it; as, sapit qui (Vir) pauca loquitur: The Man is wise, who (Man) speaketh few Words.

**APPOSITION**, is the coming together of two or more Substantives (signifying the same Thing) in the same Case; as, Flumen Rhenus, the River Rhine.

**CARDINALS**, are Nouns of Number, which answer to Quot, how many; as, unus, one; duo, two, &c.

**CASES** of a Noun in Latin, are for the most part different in Termination, and signify so many different States, or Relations of the same Thing, as, Vir, a Man; Viri, of a Man, &c.

**COLLECTIVES**, are such Words as signify more than one in the singular ; as, *Exercitus*, an Army ; *Pais*, a Country.

**COMPLETE Verbs**, are such as are used in all Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons ; as, *amo*, &c.

**COMPOUND Words**, are such as are made of two or more Words put together, or of a Word and some syllabical Adjection ; as, *Injustus*, *perlego*, *derelinquo*, &c.

**DEFECTIVE Words**, are such as are not used in some Case or Cases, Number or Tense.

**DEMONSTRATIVES**, shew, or point out a person or Thing present or remarkable, not spoken of before ; as, *Ego*, *Tu*, *Hic*, *Ille*, *Iste*, *Ipse*, *Idem*.

**DENOMINATIVES**, are Substantives or Adjectives derived from other Nouns ; and are such Words as do not belong to the other Classes of Derivatives ; as, *gratia*, favour ; *Senator*, a Senator ; from *Gratus*, *Senex* ; *trabeatus*, clad ; from *trabea*.

**DERIVATIVES**, are those Words that come from others ; as, *Justitia*, Justice ; from *justus*, just ; *lectio*, a Lesson ; from *lego*, to read.

**DESIDERATIVES**, are such Verbs as signify Desire or Endeavour to do any Thing ; They are formed of the latter Supine, by adding *rio*. They are all of the fourth Conjugation, and generally want both the Preterperfect Tense and Supine ; as, *cœnaturio*, I desire to sup ; *Esurio*, I am hungry, or desire to eat.

**DIMINUTIVES**, are such Words as diminish the Sense of their Primitives ; as, *Libellus*, a little Book ; *candidulus*, whitish ; *forbillo*, I sup ; from *Liber*, *candidus*, *forbeo*.

**DISTRIBUTIVES**, are Numerals that answer to *Quoteni*, how many each ; as, *Singuli*, one of each ; *bini*, two by two ; *terni*, by three and three, &c.

**EMPHASIS**, is an Earnestness of Expression.

**EPICENE S.** Those are commonly called Epicenes, in which the Sex cannot easily be distinguished ; and being but of one Gender, do, notwithstanding, signify



nify both the He and the She; as, *Orta, an Orta*, I either the He or the She.

**FREQUENTATIVES**, are such Verbs signify the doing of a Thing much or often. They are generally formed of the latter Supine, by changing *into it*, from Verbs of the first; and *into o*, of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the first Conjugation; as, *Clamito*, I cry frequently; *dormito*, I sleep often; from *clamo*, *dormio*. From them are also formed other Frequentatives; as, from *curro*, *curro*, and *currit* from *Jacio*, *jacto*, and *jactito*.

**GENTILES**, are Denominations of Persons taken from their Country; as, *Persa*, a Persian; *Afer*, an African, &c.

**IMITATIVE S**, are such Verbs as signify doing like the Noun they come from; as, *Græcisco*, or *Græco*, I do as the Greeks do; *Patrisso*, I imitate my Father.

**INCEPTIVES**, or **INCHOATIVES**, are such Verbs as signify that a Thing is begun, and the Action is tending to Perfection. They are formed of the second Person singular of the Indicative Mood, Present Tense, by adding *o*. They are all of the fourth Conjugation and want both Preterperfect Tense and Supine; as, from *caleo*, *cales*, is formed *calesco*, I grow or warm, *Lucescit*, the Day begins to break.

**INDEFINITES**, are Interrogatives used without a Question.

**INTERROGATIVES**, are Words by which we ask a Question; as, *quantus*, *qualis*, *quæ*, *quando*, &c.

**IRREGULAR Words**, are such as are not declined in every Respect, after the common Manner.

**ITERATIVES**. See Frequentatives.

**KIND of a Word**. A Word, as to its Figure, is either simple or compound.

**A WORD**, as to its Kind or Species, is either primitive or derivative.

**MATERIALS**, are Adjectives which signify the Matter or Colour a Thing is of; as, *aureus*, golden.

**MEDITATIVES**. See Desideratives.

MU

**MULTIPLICATIVES**, are Numerals that answer to Quotuplex, how many Fold; as, simplex, triple; duplex, double, &c.

**NUMBER**, is the Distinction between one and several; as, Annus, a Year; Anni, Years.

**NUMERALS**, are Adjectives or Adverbs that denote Number; as, one, two, three, &c. first, second, third, &c. once, twice, thrice, &c.

**OBlique CASES**, are all except the Nominative and Vocative.

**OBJECT** of a Verb, is the Case that follows a Verb Transitive.

**ORDINALS**, are Numerals which answer to Quotus, which, in order; as, primus, first; secundus, second, &c.

**PARTICLES**, are Words of the undeclined parts of Speech.

**PARTITIVES**, are Adjectives which signify many, severally, and as it were, one by one; as, omnis, nullus, quisque, &c. or a Part of many; as, quidam, aliquis, neuter, nemo, &c.

**PATRIALS**, See Gentiles.

**PATRONYMICS**, are Denominations of Persons, chiefly from their Ancestors; as, Pelides, Achilles, the Son of Peleus; Æacides, Achilles, the Grandson of Æacus; Nereis Galatea, Galettea, the Daughter of Nereus.

**PATRONYMICALS**, are Names taken from Things; as, Towns, Springs, Rivers, or Mountains; as, Iliades, Trojan Women, so called from Ilium, another Name for Troy.

**PERSONALS**, are those Verbs that are varied through the Persons in each Number.

**POSSESSIVES**, are Adjectives that signify Possession or Property; as, Herilis, belonging to the Master; Maliebris, Womanish.

**PRIMITIVES**, are those Words that come from no other Words; as, justus, just; lego, to read.

**PROPORTIONALS**, are Numerals that answer

swer to Quotuplus, how much bigger; as, Duplus, twice as much; Triplus, treble, &c.

**REDDITIVES**, are Adjectives which answer Relatives or Interrogatives; as, is, ea, tot, tantus, talis, meus, hic, &c.

**REDUNDANTS**, are such Words as are declined in some Measure, after more than one Pattern Paradigm.

**RELATIVE S**, are such Adjectives as refer to foregoing Noun; as, qui, quantus, qualis, quotus.

**RIGHT CASE S**, are Nom. and Vocative.

**ROOT S**, commonly signify the principal Ending of a Verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely the Present and Preter Tense, and the first Supine.

**A SIMPLE WORD**, is that which was never more than one Word, viz. not made up of two or more Words; as, Justus, just; lego, I read.

**SPECIES**, See Kind.

**SUBJECT**, of a Verb, is it's Nominative Case, whatsoever stands in the Room thereof.

**TEMPORAL Adverbs**, are Verbs of Time.

**TERMINATION** of a Word, is it's Ending.

**VERBALS**, are Nouns derived from Verbs; as, Vox, a Voice; from voco, to call; Bibax, a great Drinker; from bibo, to drink.

**CARDINAL NUMBERS**, answering to *Quot*, How Many?

Unus, a, um, One.

Viginti, Twenty.

Duo, a, o, Two.

Viginti unus, &c. Twenty one.

Tres, Tria, Three.

Quatuor (undeclined) Four. Triginta, Thirty.

Quinque, Five.

Quadraginta, Forty.

Sex, Six.

Quinquaginta, Fifty.

Septem, Seven.

Sexaginta, Sixty.

Octo, Eight.

Septuaginta, Seventy.

Novem, Nine.

Octoginta, Eighty.

Decem, Ten.

Nonaginta, Ninety.

Undecim



Centum, an Hundred.	Centum, an Hundred.
Ducenti, 2 a two Hundred.	Ducenti, 2 a two Hundred.
Tricenti, three Hundred.	Tricenti, three Hundred.
Quadringenti, four Hundred.	Quadringenti, four Hundred.
Quingenti, five Hundred.	Quingenti, five Hundred.
Sexcenti, six Hundred.	Sexcenti, six Hundred.
Septingenti, seven Hundred.	Septingenti, seven Hundred.
Octingenti, eight Hundred.	Octingenti, eight Hundred.
Nongenti, nine Hundred.	Nongenti, nine Hundred.
Mille, a Thousand.	Mille, a Thousand.
<b>ORDINAL NUMBERS</b> answering to	
Primus, 1, an, What, in Order.	Primus, 1, an, What, in Order.
Secundus, 2, um, first.	Quadragesimus, fortieth.
Tertius, second.	Quingagesimus, fiftieth.
Quartus, third.	Sexagesimus, sixtieth.
Quintus, fourth.	Septuagesimus, seventieth.
Sextus, fifth.	Octogesima, eightieth.
Septimus, sixth.	Nonagesimus, ninetieth.
Octavus, seventh.	Centesima the Hundredth.
Nonus, eighth.	Ducentesima, 2 Hundredth.
Decimus, ninth.	Trecentesima, three Hun-
Undecimus, tenth.	dredth.
Dodecimus, eleventh.	Quadragesima, four
Tridecimus, twelfth.	Hundredth.
Quartodecimus, thirteenth.	Quingentesima, five Hun-
Quintodecimus, fourteenth.	dredth.
Sextodecimus, fifteenth.	Sexcentesima, six Hun-
Septemdecimus, sixteenth.	dredth.
Octodecimus, 17th.	Septingentesima, seven
Septemdecimus, eighteenth.	Hundredth.
Octodecimus, nineteenth.	Octingentesima, eight
Vigesima or Vigesima,	Hundredth.
twentieth,	Nongentesima, nine Hun-
Vigesima prima, twenty-	dredth.
first, &c.	Millesima, the Thousandth.
Vigesima or trigesima,	
thirtieth.	

Obs. 1. Two Thousand Pounds; Bis Millia  
duo Millia librarum.

Obf. 1. The Sestertium of the Romans was a £. 7 : 15/. Sterling, and contained a Thousand Sestertii. Their Manner of Reckoning was this, viz. When a Numeral Noun agreed in Gender and Number with Sestertius, it denoted precisely so many Sestertii; as, decem Sestertii, just so many: But if the Noun was not so, as, decem Sestertium, it signified so many Thousands; as, decem Sestertium, ten Thousand Sestertii. If the Adverb numeral was joined to the Genitive of Sestertium, it denoted so many Hundred Thousand; as, decem Sestertium, ten Hundred Thousand Sestertii.

Sometimes they put the Adverb by itself, and sometimes added the numeral Noun to it ; as, decies Centena, ten Hundred Sestertia, or ten Hundred Thousand tertii.

# The APPENDIX.

## TABLE of the Kalends, Nones and Idus.

Mar. Mai. Jul Octob.	Jan. Aug. December.	Apr. Jun. Sept. Nov.	Februarius
Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.
6° Nonas.	4° Nonas.	4° Nonas.	4° Nonas.
5° Nonas.	3° Nonas.	3° Nonas.	3° Nonas.
4° Nonas.	Pridie Non.	Pridie Non.	Pridie Non.
3° Nonas.	None.	None.	None.
Pridie Non.	8° Idus.	8° Idus.	8° Idus.
Nonæ.	7° Idus.	7° Idus.	7° Idus.
8° Idus.	6° Idus.	6° Idus.	6° Idus.
7° Idus.	5° Idus.	5° Idus.	5° Idus.
6° Idus.	4° Idus.	4° Idus.	4° Idus.
5° Idus.	3° Idus.	3° Idus.	3° Idus.
4° Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
3° Idus.	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
Pridie Idus.	19° Kal.	18° Kal.	16° Kal.
Idus.	18° Kal.	17° Kal.	15° Kal.
17° Kal.	17° Kal.	16° Kal.	14° Kal.
16° Kal.	16° Kal.	15° Kal.	13° Kal.
15° Kal.	15° Kal.	14° Kal.	12° Kal.
14° Kal.	14° Kal.	13° Kal.	11° Kal.
13° Kal.	13° Kal.	12° Kal.	10° Kal.
12° Kal.	12° Kal.	11° Kal.	9° Kal.
11° Kal.	11° Kal.	10° Kal.	8° Kal.
10° Kal.	10° Kal.	9° Kal.	7° Kal.
9° Kal.	9° Kal.	8° Kal.	6° Kal.
8° Kal.	8° Kal.	7° Kal.	5° Kal.
7° Kal.	7° Kal.	6° Kal.	4° Kal.
6° Kal.	6° Kal.	5° Kal.	3° Kal.
5° Kal.	5° Kal.	4° Kal.	Pridie Kal.
4° Kal.	4° Kal.	3° Kal.	
3° Kal.	3° Kal.	Pridie Kal.	
Pridie Kal.	Pridie Kal.		

anno Bissextili Dies sunt 29 in Februario Mense  
tuncque sexto Kal. Mart. bis ponitur.



RULES for finding out the Kalends, Nones, and Ides.

THE Way that the Romans used to reckon the Days of their Months, was by the Kalends, Nones, and Ides. Romulus began his Months always upon the first Day of the New Moon, and was followed in this by the Authors of the other Accounts, to avoid the altering of the immoveable Feast. Therefore, at every New Moon, one of the inferior Priests, used to assemble the People in the Capitol, and call over as many Days were between that and the Nones: And so, from the Word *Calo*, to call, the first of those Days had the Name Kalends. But we must remember, that this Custom of calling the Days, continued no longer than the Year of the City, 456, when C. Flavius, the Curule Aedile, ordered the Fasti, or Kalender, to be set up in the public Places, that every Body might know the Difference of Times, and Return of Festivals.

The Nones were so called, because they reckon nine Days from them to the Ides.

The Ides were generally about the Middle of the Month; and then we may derive the Word from *iduan*, an obsolete Verb, signifying to divide.

The Kalends were always fixed to the first Day of every Month; but the Nones and the Ides, in some Months, were on different Days from the other eight. For March, May, July, and October, had six Nones each, the other only four. Therefore, in the first, the Nones were the seventh, and the Ides the fifteenth; the last, the Nones the fifteenth, and the Ides the thirtieth.

In reckoning these, they always went backward. Thus. January 1, was the first of the Kalends of January. December 31, *Prid. Kal. Jan.* December 30, the

third Kal. Jan. and so on to the 13th Day of the Month, and that was Idus Decembris; and then the 12th, Prid. Iduum Decembris, the 11th; 3, Iduum Decembris; and so on to the fifth Day, and that was Nonæ Decem. And then again the 4th, Prid. Nonarum Decemb. the third, 3 Non. Decemb. and the first Kalendæ Decembris.

We must observe, that when we meet with Kalendas, Nonas, or Idus, in the Accusative Case, the Preposition ante, is always understood: As tertio Kalendas, Idus, or Nonas, is the same as tertio die ante Kal. Non. Idus.

These Rules will plainly appear by the foregoing Table.

F I N I S.

THE APPENDIX

and Kal. Jan. and so on to the 12th Day of the Month  
that was Idus Decembris; and then the 13th Id.  
Idus Decembris, the 14th Idus Decembris,  
and so on to the 15th Idus Decembris, and that was Non.  
Idus Decembris, the 16th Idus Decembris, and then again the 17th Idus Decembris,  
and the 18th Idus Decembris, and the 19th Idus Decembris,  
and the 20th Idus Decembris, and the 21st Idus Decembris,  
and the 22nd Idus Decembris, and the 23rd Idus Decembris,  
and the 24th Idus Decembris, and the 25th Idus Decembris,  
and the 26th Idus Decembris, and the 27th Idus Decembris,  
and the 28th Idus Decembris, and the 29th Idus Decembris,  
and the 30th Idus Decembris, and the 31st Idus Decembris,  
and the 1st Kal. Jan. and so on to the 31st Kal. Jan.

31 DE 63

V  
C  
N  
A  
W  
C  
The  
Defig



A  
VOCABULARY,  
OR,  
CATALOGUE:  
CONTAINING,  
THE CHIEF OF THE IRREGULAR  
NOUNS AND VERBS,  
AND THE PRINCIPAL PART OF THE  
WORDS USED IN THE SYNTAXIS  
OF THE PRECEDING  
GRAMMAR:  
AND THE FIRST FORTY COLLOQUIES OR  
C O R D E R Y.

The long Syllables are printed with SMALL CAPITALS,  
the short one's with *Italics*.

Designed particularly for the Ease and Assistance of  
young STUDENTS.

VOCABULARY,

CATALOGUE:

CONTAINING

THE CHIEF OF THE IRREGULAR

NOUNS AND VERBS.

AND THE TRILINGUAL PART OF THE

WORDS USED IN THE SYNTAX

OF THE LANGUAGE

G R A M M A R :

AND THE FIRST FORTY COLLOCATIONS

C O R D E R Y.

The long syllables are printed with small Capitals  
the first one's with large.

Designed particularly for the Sale and Advantage of  
young Students.

# VOCABULARY,

O R,

## CATALOGUE, &c.

A

**A**BDO, are, idi, itum. Act: to hide  
**A**beo, ire, ivi, itum. Neut: to go away  
**A**erro, are, avi, atum. Neut: to err  
**A**boleo, ire, vi, & evi, itum, & etum. Act: to abolish  
**A**brahamus, i. M. Abraham  
**A**bcondo, ire, di, vel didi, itum, et sum. Act: to hide  
**A**boleo, ire, vi, itum. Neut: to grow out of use  
**A**bolvero, are, vi, utum. Act: to acquit  
**A**bsum, esse, fui. Verb. Irreg: to be absent  
**A**busor, ti, us, sum. Dep: to abuse  
**A**ccendo, ire, si, sum. Act: to kindle  
**A**ccendor, di, sus sum, vel fui. Pass: to be enflamed  
**A**cipio, ire, spi, ptum. Act: to take  
**A**cti, orum. Neut: Sing: caret: Public Acts  
**A**ctio, onis. f. Action  
**A**ccurate, tius, tissime. Adv: exactly  
**A**cus, us. f. a Needle  
**A**ddo, ire, idi, itum. Act: to add  
**A**deo, ire, ivi, et adii, itum. Act: to go to  
**A**dhibeo, ire, ui, itum. Act: to admit  
**A**dhibendus, a, um. Par: fut: in dus: to be admitted  
**A**dipiscor, i, adeptus sum, vel fui. Dep: to get  
**A**dministro, are, avi, atum. Act: to wait upon  
**A**dmissor,



Admiror, *ari, atus sum, vel fui.* Dep: to admire  
 Admoneo, *ere, ai, itum.* Act: to advise, to admonish  
 Admonitio, *onis, f.* Admonition  
 Admoveo, *overe, ovi, otum.* Act: to move  
 Adulesco, *ere, ui, avi, ultum.* Neut: } to grow up, to shoot forward  
 Adspectus, *us, M:* Regard  
 Adsum, *es, fui, esse, futurus.* Verb irreg: to be present  
 Adventus, *us, M:* an Arrival  
 Adversus, *a, um.* Par: against  
 Aegrotō, *are, avi, atum.* Neut: to be sick  
 Emulus, *a, um.* Adj: emulating  
 Emulus, *i, M:* a Rival  
 Equalis, *is, e.* Adj: equal  
 Equitas, *atis, f.* Equity  
 Equus, *a, um.* Adj: equal, equine  
 Aer, *is, M. Sing.* Aeremet Aera, } the Air  
 Acc. Pl. caret:  
 Aeris, *is, N. Pl.* caret:  
 Estimo, *are, avi, atum.* Act: to estimate  
 Eternus, *a, um.* Adj: eternal, everlasting  
 Ether, *is, M. Acc. Sing, a: Pl. caret:* the Ether  
 Evum, *i, N.* an Age, Eternity  
 Affero, *erre, attuli, allatum.* Act: to bring  
 Agnosco, *ere, ovi, itum.* Act: to acknowledge  
 Ago, *ere, egi, actum.* Act: to act, to do  
 Alienus, *a, um.* Adj: another Man  
 Alioquin Adv: otherwise  
 Aliquando Adv: sometimes  
 Aliquantulum Adv: a very little  
 Aliquis, *quæ, quod, vel quid:* Something, or Somebody  
 Allicio, *ere, exi, eatum.* Act: to allure  
 Alloquor, *qui, cutus sum, vel fui.* Dep: to speak  
 Alo, *ere, ui, ltum, et itum.* Act: to nourish or feed  
 Alter, *a, um.* Gen. ius, Adj: the other  
 Altus, *a, um.* Adj: high  
 Ambages, *is, f.* an idle Circumstance or Word  
 Ambigo, *ere.* Præt caret. Act: to be in doubt  
 Ambulo, *are, avi, atum.* Neut: to walk

amicio, ire, ivi, icui, et iri, icum. A&: to cloath  
 amicus, i. M. a Friend  
 amitto, ire, si, istum. A&: to lose  
 amo, are, avi, arum. A&: to love  
 amor, ara, atus sum, vel fui. Pass. to be loved  
 amplius, a, um. Adj. prior, plissimus: large  
 ancilla, æ. f. a Maid Servant  
 anglicanus, a, um. Adj: } of or belonging to English  
 anglicus, a, um. Adj: }  
 anglice, Adv: in English  
 anhelus, a, um. Adj: short winded  
 animulus, i. M. a Sweet-Heart  
 animus, i. M. the Mind  
 annuo, ire. Pres. caret. Neut: to nod  
 annus, i. M. a Year  
 aperio, ire, ui, rtum. A&: to open  
 apis, is. f. a Bee  
 apiscor, sci, aptus sum, vel fui. Dep: to get  
 appetentia, æ. f. Appetite, Desire  
 applico, are, ui, & avi, itum & atum. A&: to apply  
 apius, a, um. Adj: fit  
 aqua, æ. f. Water  
 ara, æ. f. an Altar  
 arbitrium, ii. N. Judgment  
 arbor, oris. f. a Tree  
 arca, æ. f. a Chest  
 arcesso, ire, ivi, itum. A&: to call  
 ardeo, ere, si, sum. Neut: to glow  
 ardor, oris. M. a Burning  
 area, æ. f. a Plain  
 argumentum, i. N. an Argument  
 arma, orum. N. Sing. caret: Arms  
 ars, tis. f. Art  
 artus, uum. M. Sing. caret: the Joints  
 as or Assis, is. M. a Pound Weight  
 assiduus, a, um Adj: diligent  
 assuesco, ere, svi, stum, Neut: to accustom  
 attendo, ere, di, sum, & tum, Neut: to attend  
 Attendus

- Attendus, a, um, Adj. & Par: attentive  
 Artineo, ere, ui, entum, Aſ: to art  
 Attramentum, i, N. ink  
 Auctor, oris, M. author  
 Audeo, ere, ſus, ſum, vel fui, N. P. to be bold  
 Audio, ire, iui, itum, Aſ: to hear  
 Auditorium, ii, N. Auditory  
 Auſero, ferre, abruſi, ablatus, Aſ: to carry away  
 Augeo, ere, xi, ſum, Aſ: to encrease  
 Auratus, a, um, Adj: gilded  
 Auspicio, i, N. Omen  
 Auspicio, Adv: luckily  
 Auxilium, ii, N. Help  
 Aveo, ere, Pr: caret, Aſ: to cover  
 Babylon, onis: Babylon  
 Ballo, iare, avi, atum: Neut: to play  
 Barathrum, i, N. Plur. caret: a deep Place in Hell  
 Beatus, a, um, Adj: ior, illuſus: blessed or happy  
 Bellaria, orum, N. Sing. caret: banquetting  
 Bello, are, avi, atum, Neut: to make War  
 Bellua, æ, f. a Beast  
 Bellinus, a, um, Adj. Poſs: belonging to Beasts  
 Bellum, i, N. War  
 Bene, Adj: Well  
 Benefacio, ere, eci, actum, Aſ: to do a good  
 Beneficentia, æ, f. Liberal  
 Beneficium, ii, N. a Benefit  
 Benignitas, atis, f. Bounty  
 Benignus, a, um, Adj: liberal  
 Beo, are, avi, atum, Adj: to make happy  
 Bibliopola, æ, M. a Book-Seller  
 Bibo, ire, ibi, itum, Aſ: to drink  
 Bilis, iſ, f. Plur: only es: Melancholly  
 Blandior, iri, itus, ſum, vel fui, Dep: to flatter  
 Blanditiæ, arum, f. Sing. caret: Flattery  
 Bonitas, atis, f. Goodness  
 Bonus, a, um, Adj: good



C

Cado, re, cecidi, casum, Neut ;  
Cado, re, cecidi, casum, Act  
Catar, aris, M.  
Catalanitas, atis, f.  
Catalanus, i, M.  
Cateat, aris, N.  
Cateus, ei, M  
Catechizandum, f. Sing. caret  
Cateo, re, ui, calitum : Neat :  
Catefacio, re, re, actum : Act :  
Catefacio, a, um, Adj :  
Cateo, re, vi Sup. caret :  
Cambio, re, psi, pfum, Act  
Catechizantium, orum, M. Sing. caret :  
Cano, re, cesini, cantum : Act :  
Capello, re, i & ivi, sum & sum : Act :  
Capto, re, capi, captum : Act ;  
Capistrum, i, N. Plur. & a ;  
Caput, itis, N.  
Cateo, re, ui & flus, sum, vel sum, itum & sum ;  
Carmen, inis N  
Carpo, re, psi, tum. Act ;  
Carnis, is M  
Carnis, orum N Sing. caret ;  
Carnis, a, um, Adj ;  
Catalogus, i, M.  
Catechismus, i, M.  
Cato, onis, M.  
Causa, e, f.  
Cautus, a um. Part :  
Caveo, re, avi, autum. Act ;  
Cedo, re, mi, isum. Neat :  
Ceter, Gen : is. Adj :  
Cello, re, ceculi, culsum. Act :  
Censeo, re, ui, sum. Act :  
Centum. Indec :  
Cetho, re. Pr. caret :  
Cernor,

Cernor. Pass.		to be perceived
Certus, a, um. Adj.		certain
Cete. N. Indecl.		a Whale
Charta, æ. f.		Paper
Christianus, i. M.		a Christian
Christus, i. M.		Christ
Cicer, eris. N.		a Vetch
Cicero, onis. M.		Cicero
Cino, are, vi, itum. Aët.		to incite
Circumforaneus, a, um. Adj.		peddling
Circumpango, are, ãgi, ætum. Aët.		to plant about
Circumsto, are, ãi, itum. Neut.		to stand about
Cito, ius, issimè. Adv.		swiftly
Civilis, is, e. Adj.		civil
Civis, is. C.		a Citizen
Claudo, are, si, sum. Aët.		to shut
Clemens, tis, tior, tissimus. Adj.		mild
Clueo, are. Præt; caret; Neut.		to be famous
Codex, icis. M.		a Book, the Stock of Tree
Cœlestis, is, e. Adj.		heavenly
Cœlum, i. N. Præt; Cœli.		Heaven
Cœna, æ. f.		a Supper
Cœnum, i. N.		Dir
Cœno, are, avi, atum. Aët.		to sup
Cœrceo, are, cui, citum. Aët.		to restrain
Cogitatio, onis. f.		a Thought
Cogito, are, avi, atum. Aët.		to think
Cognosco, are, ovi, itum. Aët.		to know
Cogo, are, òegi, ætum. Aët.		to compel
Collieo, are, si, sum. Aët.		to knock together
Colligo, are, ãgi, ætum. Aët.		to gather
Colloquor, qui, cutus sum, } vel fui. Dep;		to discourse together
Colloquium, ii. N.		a Dialogue
Colludo, are, si, sum. N.		to play together
Collutor, oris. M.		a Playfellow
Colo, are, ui, ultum. Aët.		to worship
Columna, æ. f.		a round Pillar
		Colus

Colus, i, vel us. f. *Distaff*  
 Comes, itis. C. *Companion*  
 Commemoratio, onis. f. *Remembrance*  
 Commentaribulum, i. N. *a little register Book*  
 Comminiscor, sci, ntus, sum, vel fui. Dep; *to invent*  
 Committo, re, isi, ifsum. Act; *to commit*  
 Commodat6. Adv; *by Loan*  
 Commodo, are, avi, atum. Act; *to lend*  
 Commodus, a, um. Adj; ior, ifsumus. *convenient*  
 Commonefacio, re, sci, actum. Act; *to administer*  
 Commoror, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Dep; *to sojourn*  
 Communico, are, avi, atum. Act; *to communicate*  
 Communis, is, e. Adj; *common*  
 Commuto, are, avi, atum. Act; *to change*  
 Compactus, a, um. Part; *joined together*  
 Compar, aris. Adj; *equal*  
 Compatior, ti, fus sum, vel } *to suffer together*  
 fui. Dep; }  
 Compenso, are, avi, atum. Act; *to requite*  
 Comperio, ire, ri, rtum. Act; *to find out*  
 Compesco, re, scui. Sup. caret. Act; *to restrain*  
 Complacoe, re, ui, itum. Act; *to please well*  
 Compleo, re, svi, rtum Neut; *to accomplish*  
 Complico, re, ui, & avi, itum, et atum. *to wrap up*  
 Compos, otis, A. *having obtained his Desire*  
 Concino, re, ui entum. Act; *to sing in Concert*  
 Concio, onis, f. *a Pulpit*  
 Concionor, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Dep; *to preach*  
 Concutio, re, fsi ifsum, Act; *to shake*  
 Condemno, are, atum Act; *to condemn*  
 Condiscipulus, li. M. *a School-Fellow*  
 Condo, re, idi, rtum. Act; *to lay up*  
 Confabulor, ari, atus, sum, vel fui. Dep; *to discourse*  
 Confero, re, tuli. llatum Act; *to bestow*  
 Confiteor, ari, fessus sum, vel fui. Dep; *to confess*  
 Conjicio, re, ci, ctum. Act; *to cast together*  
 Conjunctio onis, f. *a joining together*  
 Conjugium, ii, N. *Marriage*  
 Connives, re, iui & ixi. Sup. caret; Neut; *to wink*  
 Conquinisco,



Conquiesco, re, quexi. Sup. caret;  
 Conradus, di, M. Conrad, a Man's Name  
 Conseruare, are, avi, atum. Act;  
 Confidere, re, di, esse. Neut;  
 Confiditor, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Dep;  
 Conspargo, re, si, sum. Act;  
 Consul, are, iti atum & itum. Neut;  
 Consulo, re ui, ultum. Act;  
 Contemno, re, ptum. Act;  
 Contendere, di, dis, tisse. Adv.  
 Contentio, onis, f.  
 Contendens, a, um Part: of Contendor.  
 Contemnus, a, um, Adj;  
 Contextus, us, M. a weaving together  
 Continere, re, ui, entum. Act;  
 Coquo, re, xi, ctum. Act;  
 Conviciu, ii. N. a Reproach  
 Conuictus, us, M. a hearing together  
 Corpus, oris. N. a Body  
 Corripio, re, xi, ctum. Act;  
 Corripio, re, ui, ctum. Act;  
 Corruo, re, ui, utum. Neut;  
 Crassus, a, um. Adj;  
 Crastinus, a, um. Adj;  
 Crater, is. M. Acc. Sing. a. Pl. as;  
 Credo, re, idi, ctum. Act;  
 Creare, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Pass;  
 Crepo, are, ui, itum. Neut;  
 Crassus, i. M. Crassus, a Man's Name  
 Cubiculum, i. N. a Chamber  
 Cubile, is. N. a Bed  
 Cubo, are, ui, itum. Neut;  
 Culpa, e, f. a Fault  
 Culpo, care, avi, atum. Act;  
 Cultor, oris M. a Tiller  
 Cumbo, re, ubui, ubitum. Neut;  
 Cumbula, onum. N. Sing. caret.  
 Cure, ari, f. Sing. caret;  
 Cunctator, ari, atus, sum, vel fui. Dep.  
 Cupo, re, ui, itum. Neut;

cupio, re, i, itum. Act;	to desire
curiosus, a, um. Adj.	curious
curo, re, avi, atum. Act;	to take Care of
curo, re, cucurri, cursum. Neut;	to run
curtus, us. M.	a short
condemno, are, avi, atum. Act;	to condemn
deambulation, onis. f.	a walking abroad
deauratus, a, um. Part;	gilded
decalogus, i. M.	the Decalogue
decenter. Adv;	decently
decreto, re, cretum. Act;	to decree
decipio, re, cepi, ptum. Act;	to crop
dedido, re, idi, idum. Act;	to cut off
deiplo, re, epi, eptum. Act;	to deceive
dedo, re, idi, idum. Act;	to yield
deduco, re, xi, ctum. Act;	to bring away
desistisco, sci, cessi sum, vel fui. Dep;	to be weary
desolatus, a, um. Part;	bewailed
deformis, is, e. Adj; ior, issimus.	deformed, ugly
desungor, gi, ctus sum, vel fui. Dep;	to be rid of
desuo, re, gi. Act; Sup; caret.	to live
deinde. Adv;	then
delecto, are, avi, atum. Freq;	to delight
deleo, re, evi, etum. Act;	to blot out
delectum, ii. N. Plur; a, arum. M.	Delight.
delictum, i. N.	a Fault
deligo, are, avi, atum.	to bind up
deliteo, ere, ui. Sup; caret. Neut;	to lie hid
delino, re, mpsi, mptum. Act;	to take away
densus, a, um. Adj; ior, issimus.	thick
denovo. Adv;	again
depono, re, nxi, & pxi, actum. Act;	to fasten down
depassus, a, um. Part;	fed upon
deposco, re, posci, }	to desire earnestly
poscitum. Act;	
deprehendo, re, di, sum. Act;	to surprize
descendo, re, di, sum. Act;	to descend
desisco, re, i, itum. Act;	to revolt
Discribo,	

Describo, re, psi, ptum. Act; to write or  
 Desero, re, ui, itum. Act; to forsake  
 Desilio, re, ui, i vi, & ii, ultum. Act; to leap down  
 Desino, re, i vi, itum. Act; to cease  
 Desisto, re, fti fti tum. Act; to desist  
 Desum, esse, fui, futurum. Verb irreg; to be absent  
 Detraho, re, xi, ctum. Act; to detract  
 Devo, are, avi, atum. Act; to devote  
 Deus, i. M.  
 Dextra, e. f. the right Hand  
 Dicatus, a, um. Part; dedicate  
 Dicendus, a, um. Part; to be said  
 Dico, re, xi, ctum. Act; to speak, or say  
 Dictata, orum. N. Sing. caret. Precept  
 Dicto, are, avi, atum. Freq; to dictate  
 Dictum, i. N. a Saying, or Word  
 Dies, ei. M. or f. a Day  
 Differo, ere, distuli, dilatum. Act; to defer  
 Diffiteor, ri, fessus sum, vel fui. Dep; to deny  
 Digredior, di, gressus sum, vel fui. Dep; to go aside  
 Diligenter. Adv; diligently  
 Diligo, re, exi, ectum. Act; to love  
 Diluo, re, ui, utum. Act; to wash, or rinse  
 Dimidium, ii. N. the Half  
 Dira, atum. f. Sing. caret. Execration  
 Discipulus, i. M. a Scholar  
 Disco, re, didici. Sup. caret. Act; to learn  
 Discurro, re, ri, rsu. Act; to run hither and thither  
 Disertus, a, um. Adj; ior, issimus. eloquent  
 Dispensator, oris. M. a Butler  
 Dispergo, re, si, sum. Act; to scatter  
 Dispersco, re, ui. Sup. caret. } to drive Beasts  
 Act; } from Pasture  
 Dupliceo, ro, ui, itum. Neut; to displease  
 Disputo, are, avi, atum. Act; to dispute  
 Dissimilis, is, e. Adj; ior, limus. unlike  
 Distentus, a, um. Part; stretched out  
 Disto, are, iti, atum. Act; to differ  
 Distraho, re, xi, ctum. Act; to distract  
 Dito



Dito, are, avi, atum. Act;	to enrich
Divido, are, is, isum. Act;	to divide
Divinus, a, um. Adj;	divine
Divitiæ, atum. f. Sing. caret.	Riches
Diù. Adv;	long
Do, are, edi, atum.	to give
Doceo, ere, cui, ctum. Act;	to teach
Docilis, is, e. Adj;	apt to learn
Doctus, a, um. Part;	learned
Doleo, are, ui, itum. Neut;	to grieve
Dolus, i. M.	Deceit
Domesticus, a, um. Adj;	Domestic
Dominicus, a, um. Adj;	} of, or belonging to the Master
poss.	
Dominus, i. M.	a Lord or Master
Domo, are, avi, & ui, atum & itum. Act;	to tame
Domus, i, velus. f.	a House
Dono, are, avi, atum. Act;	to give
Donum, i. N.	a Gift
Dormio, ire, ivi, itum. Neut;	to sleep
Dubius, a, um. Adj;	doubtful
Duceni, æ, a. Adj; &	} two Hundred
Ducenti, æ, a. Adj;	
Duco, are, xi, ctum. Act;	to lead
Dummodò. Adv;	so that
Duo, æ, o. Adj; Sing. caret.	two
Duodecim. Indecl;	twelve
E	
Eberacum, i.	York, the Name of a City
Eccé. Adv.	behold
Edax, acis. Adj;	gluttonous
Edisco, ere, didici. Act; Sup. ]	} to learn by Heart
caret.	
Effero, erre, extuli, elatum. Act;	to bring out
Egeo, ere, gui. Neut; Sup. caret.	to want
Eleganter. Adv; ius, isimé,	elegantly
Elicio, ere, cui, citum. Act;	to draw out
Eligo, ere, egi, ectum. Act;	to choose
Emineo, ere, ui. Sup. caret. Neut.	to excel
	Emo,

Emo, ere, emi, mptum. Act;	to burn
Enitor, ti: ifus, & ixus sum, vel fui. Dep;	to endeavour
Eo, ire, ivi, itum. Neut;	to go
Epistola, æ. f.	an Epistle
Epulor, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Dep;	to feast
Epulum, i. N. Plur. æ.	a Feast
Equus, i. M.	a Horse
Eripio, ere, ui, eptum. Act;	to snatch away
Evangelicus, a, um. Adj;	of the Gospel
Eundus, a, um. Ger; in dus from Eo	to go
Excello, ere, ui, sum. Act;	to exceed
Excubiæ, urum. f.	a Watch
Exculpo, ere, pli, ptum. Act;	to carve
Excurro, ere, si, ifum. Neut;	to run
Excutio, ere, ussi, ussum. Act;	to shake
Exedo, ere, edi, esum. Act;	to eat
Exequiæ, arum. f. Sing. caret.	a Funeral
Exerceo, ere, cui, citum. Act;	to exercise
Exercitatio, onis. f.	frequent Exercise
Exigo, igere, egi, actum. Act;	to require
Exilio, ire, ui, ultum. Neut;	to start
Existimor, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Pass;	to be esteemed
Exitium, i. N.	Ruin
Exoleo, ere, ui & eui, etum. Neut;	to fade
Exolesco, ere, ui & eui, atum. Neut;	to grow out of U
Expecto, are, avi, atum. Act;	to expect
Expedio, ire, ivi, itum. Act;	to deliver
Expedit. Imp;	it is expedient
Expeditus, a, um. Part;	ready
Expendo, ere, di, sum. Act;	to weigh
Expurgor, sci, ectus sum, vel fui. Dep;	to walk
Experientia, æ. f.	Experience
Exerior, iri, ritus sum, vel fui. Dep;	to touch
Expes. Adv;	hopeless
Explico, are, avi, & ui atum & itum. Act;	to explain
Extæ, orum. N. Sing. caret.	the Entrails of Beasts
Extorris, is. C.	one that is banished
	Exu

Facio, are, ai, utum. Act;	to put off Cloaths
Facivis, ai, um. f. Sing. caret.	Cloaths put off
Fabrico, are, avi, atum. Act;	to forge
Fabulor, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Dep;	to prate
Facesso, are, si, & ivi, sum & itum. Act;	to dispatch
Facilis, is, e. Adj; ior, illimus.	easy
Facio, are, sci, actum. Act;	to make, or do
Factus, a, um. Part;	made, or done
Fallax, acis. Adj;	deceitful
Fama, æ. f. Plur. only as	Fame
Fames, is. f. Plur. caret.	Hunger
Familia, æ. f.	a Family
Far, ris. N. Plur. only ra.	Bread-Corn
Fas. N. Indecl;	lawful, right
Fasti, orum. M. Sing. caret.	a Roman Calander
Fatidlo, ire, ivi, itum. Act;	to despise
Fateor, eri, fassus sum, vel fui. Dep;	to confess
Fatisco, are. Neut; Præt. caret.	to open, or gape
Fauces, ium. f. Sing. caret.	the Jaws
Faustus, a, um. Adj;	fortunate
Faveo, are, favi, fautum. Act;	to favour
Favens, ntis. Part;	favouring
Faxim, is, it, int: for fecerim.	to effect
Famulus, i. M.	a Servant
Familiaris, is, e. Adj;	familiar
Fell, lis. N.	Gall
Felicitas, atis. f.	Happiness
Felix, icis. Adj; icior, <del>issimus</del> .	happy
Ferendus, a, um. Part;	to be borne with
Feriatas, a, um. Adj;	at Leisure
Ferie, arum. f.	Holy Days
Ferio, ire. Præt. caret. Act;	to strike
Ferrum, i. N.	a Sword
Ferveo, are, vi. Sup. caret. Neut;	to be hot
Fervesco, are, vi. Sup. caret. Neut;	to grow hot
Festino, are, avi, atum. Act;	to make Haste
Ficus, i, & us. f.	a Fig Tree, or Fig
Fido, are. fus sum, vel fui. N. p.	to trust
	Figus,



Figō, are, xi, xum. Act;	to fix or fasten
Filius, ii. M.	a Son
Filum, i. N. Plur. i & a.	a Thread
Fimū, i. N. ]	Dung
Fimus, i. M. ]	
Findo, are, idi, ſum. Act;	to cleave
Fingo, nxi, ſum. Act;	to feign
Finio, are, ivi, itum. Act;	to finiſh
Finis, is: M. vel f.	an End
Fio, ari, factus ſum, vel fui: N. p.	to be made
Flamma, æ. f.	Flame
Flaveo, ere, avi: Sup. caret. Neut;	to be yellow
Flavus, a, um. Adj.	yellow
Flecto, ere, xi, ſum. Act.	to bend
Fleo, ere, evi, ſum. Act.	to weep
Flo, are, avi, atum. Act.	to blow
Flos, oris. M.	a Flower
Flumen, inis. N.	a River
Fluo, ere, xi, xum. Neut;	to flow
Fodio, are, odi, oſſum. Act;	to dig
Fons, ntis. M.	a Fountain
Forum, i. N. Plur. only a.	a Market Place
Forem—fore. Defec;	to be hereafter
Fortunatus, a, um, Adj.	fortunate
Fortuna, æ, f.	Fortune
Fortaſſe, Adv.	perhaps
Fors, tis. f.	Chance
Foſſa, æ, f.	a Ditch
Frango, are, egi, actum. Act;	to break
Frater, ris. M.	a Brother
Frānum, i. N. Pl. i vel a	a Bridle
Frequens, ntis. Adj.	frequent
Fretus, a, um. Part;	relying upon
Frico, are, ui, & avi, ſum & atum. Act;	to rub
Frigeo, are, xi. Sup. caret. Neut.	to be cold
Frugi. Adj. indec;	Thrifty
Fruior, i, ſtus; vel itus ſum, vel fui. Dep;	to enjoy
Fruſtra, Adv;	in vain
Fuga, æ, f.	Flight
	Fugio,

Fugio  
 Fulci  
 Fulg  
 Fund  
 Fund  
 Furo  
 Furtu  
 Gale  
 Garr  
 Gaud  
 Gelu  
 Gene  
 Geni  
 Genu  
 Genu  
 Gero  
 Geſti  
 Gign  
 Glad  
 Glife  
 Glor  
 Glor  
 Gnar  
 Grad  
 Grad  
 Grat  
 Grat  
 Grāt  
 Grav  
 Grav  
 Gulo  
 Gurr  
 Hab  
 Ha b  
 Har  
 Hau

Fugio, re, gi, itum. Act;	to flee, escape
Fulcio, re, si, tum. Act;	to prop
Fulgeo, re, si: Sup: caret: Neut	to shine
Fundo, re, udi, usum. Act;	to pour out
Fundor, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Pass;	to be founded
Furo, re. Præt. caret. Neut;	to be mad
Furtum, i. N.	Theft
G	
Galerus, i. M.	a Hat
Garrio, re, iui, itum. Neut;	to prate
Gaudeo, re, gavisus sum, vel fui. N. p.	to rejoice
Gelu. N. Indec;	Frost
Geneva, æ. f.	Geneva, the Name of a City
Genitus, a, um. Part;	begotten
Genu. Indec; N.	a Knee
Genus, eris. N.	a Race. Kind
Gero, re, iui, itum. Act;	to bear
Gestio, re, iui, itum. Neut;	to leap for Joy
Gigno, re, genui, genitum. Act;	to beget
Gladius, ii. M.	a Sword
Glisco, re. Præt. caret. Neut;	to desire greatly
Gloria, æ. f.	Glory
Glorior, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Dep;	to boast
Gnarus, a, um. Adj;	skilful
Grador, di, gressus sum, vel fui. Dep;	to go
Gradus, us. M.	a Step. Degree
Grates. f. Nom. Acc. & Voc. Plur.	Thanks
Gratia, æ. f.	Grace. Favour
Gratus, a, um. Adj; ior, issimus.	thankful
Gravis, is, e. Adj; ior, issimus.	heavy, grave
Gravitas, atis. f.	Gravity
Gulosus, a, um. Adj;	gluttonous
Gummi. N. Indecl;	Gum
H	
Habeo, re, ui, itum. Act:	to have
Habitus, a, um. Pari;	had
Hæreo, ere, si, sum. Neut;	to stick
Haurio, re, si, stum & sum. Act:	to draw
	Hebdomas,

Hesperus, i. M. Plur. caret; the Evening  
 Hieronymus, a, um. Adj; of Yesterday  
 Hic, Adv; To-day  
 Homo, i. M. a Man, or Woman  
 Honestus, a, um. Adj; idr, istus. honest  
 Hora, z. f. an Hour  
 Horatius, ii. M. Horace, a Man's Name  
 Hordeum, ei. N. Barley  
 Horridus, a, um. Adj; horrid  
 Hortor, ari, atus sum, vel fui, Dep; to exhort  
 Hortus, i. M. a Garden  
 Hospes, is, M. an Host, or Guest  
 Humus, i. M. Pl. caret; the Ground  

I & J

 Jaceo, re, ui, itum. Neut; to lie down  
 Jacio, re, eci, actum. Act; to throw  
 Jampridem. Act; long ago  
 Ico, re, ci ctum. Act; to strike  
 Idus, um. f. Sing. caret; the Ides  
 Ientaculum, i. N. Breakfast  
 Igitur. Adv; therefore  
 Immineo, re, ui. Sup. caret. N. to hang over  
 Immortalis, is, e. Adj; immortal  
 Immunis, is, e. Adj; free  
 Impedio, re, di, itum. Act; to hinder  
 Imperitus, a, um. Adj; unskilful  
 Impertio, re, ivi, itum. Act; to impart  
 Impingo, re, efi, actum. Act; to dash against  
 Impius, a, um. Adj; impious  
 Impleo, re, evi ctum. Act; to fill  
 Impos, otis. Adj; unable  
 Impressus, us. M. a pressing forward  
 Impugno, re, avi, atum. Act; to fight against  
 Inestimabilis, is, e. Adj; inestimable  
 Incesso, re, i, & ivi, itum. Freq; to provoke  
 Incido, re, edi, cosum. Neut; to fall into  
 Incipio, re, epi, eptum. Act; to begin  
 Incito, re, avi, atum. Act; to provoke  
 Incommodum,



commodum, i. N.	Damage
conatus, a, um. Adj.	Hurtful
consultus, a, um. Adj.	Unadvised
calco, are, avi, atum. Act.	to tread
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to proclaim
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to want
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	unworthy
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	poor, needy
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to put on
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	Disposition
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	a Truce, Respite
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to indulge
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to play the Fool
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	foolish
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	inexorable
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	an Infant
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	Sacrifices for the
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	Dead
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to bring in
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	Denial
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to stain or dye
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	fastened
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	poured in
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	Ingenuity
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	unthankful
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to go in
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to invade
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	an Enemy
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	a Beginning
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	an Injury
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	without Orders
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	innocent
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	harmless
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to nod, to hint
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	poor, needy
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to be mad
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	mad
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to ingraft
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	to set, or put in
clamo, are, xii, tum. Act.	Infidiz,

Infidus, arum. f. Sing. caret  
 Instar. N. indecl;  
 Instinctus, us. M.  
 Insulto, are. avi, atum. Freq; to leap upon  
 Integer, gratum. Adj; whole, uncorrupted  
 Intellego, re, xi, sum. Aft; to understand  
 Interdictus, a, um. Part; forbidde  
 Interdum. Adv.; sometime  
 Interea. Adv.; in the mean Time  
 Interest. Imp; it belongs  
 Interius. Adv; more inward  
 Intervenio, ire, eni, ntum. N. to come between  
 Invado, are, i, sum. Aft; to invade  
 Invenio, ire, ni, ntum. Aft; to find  
 Invideo, are, idi, isum. Neut; to envy  
 Invigilo, are, avi, atum. Neut; to watch diligently  
 Invito, are, avi, atum. Aft; to invite  
 Jocus, i. IM. Pl. i & a.  
 Irascor, ci, atus sum, vel fui. Dep; to be angry  
 Irrideo, ire, i, sum. Neut; to mock  
 Isaacus, i. M. Isaac, a Man's Name  
 Iter, ineris. N. a Journey  
 Iterum. Adv; again  
 Jubar, aris. N. Pl. caret. a Sun Beam  
 Jubeo, re, fli, sum. Aft; to order  
 Juundus, a, um. Adj; ior, issimus. pleasa  
 Judex, icis. M. a Judge  
 Jugerum, i. N. an Acre  
 Jugulo, are, avi, atum. Aft; to cut the Throat  
 Jungo, re, nxi, sum. Aft; to join  
 Jus, ris. N. a Law, Right  
 Justus, us. M. a Commander  
 Juvans, ntis. Part; Helping  
 Juvetus, utis. f. You  
 Juvo, are, vi, tum. Aft; to help  
 Labes, is. f. Pl. only es.  
 Labo, are. Præt. caret. to decay  
 Labor, bi, pius sum, vel fui. Dep; to labor  
 Labor

Laboro, are, avi, atum. *Neut. 3. i. x. to labour*  
 Lactis, eris. *N. 3. A. i. x. i. v. Milk*  
 Laccio, are, fi & fivi, itum. *Act. 3. i. x. to provide*  
 Lacio, are, ui & xi, itum. *Act. 3. i. x. to ensure*  
 Lactes, ium. *Dep. 3. i. x. the small Cuts*  
 Lacus, us. *M. 3. i. x. a Lake*  
 Lædens, ntis. *Part: 3. i. x. hurting*  
 Lædō, are, fi, sum. *Act: 3. i. x. to injure*  
 Læsus, a, um. *Part: 3. i. x. injured*  
 Lætor, ari, atus sum, vel fui. *Pass: 3. i. x. to be glad*  
 Lætus, a, um. *Adj: 3. i. x. glad*  
 Lambō, are, bi. *Sup. caret: 3. i. x. to lick*  
 Lancea, æ. *f. 3. i. x. a Lance, or Javelin*  
 Latē. *Adv: 3. i. x. ius. i. x. i. x. widely*  
 Lateo, are, ui, itum. *Neut: 3. i. x. to lie hid*  
 Latine. *Adv: 3. i. x. in Latin*  
 Latus, eris. *N. 3. A. i. x. a Side*  
 Laudabilis, is, e. *Adj: 3. i. x. laudable*  
 Laudandus, a, um. *Part: 3. A. i. x. to be praised*  
 Laudatus, a, um. *P. & A. ior, i. x. i. x. commended*  
 Laudo, are, avi, atum. *Act: 3. i. x. to praise*  
 Laurus, i, vel us. *F. M. 3. i. x. Laurel*  
 Laus, dis. *F. 3. A. i. x. Praise*  
 Lavo, are, avi, atum, otum & avatum. *Act: 3. i. x. to wash*  
 Lectus, i. *M. 3. i. x. a Bed*  
 Legō, ege, egi, ectum. *Act: 3. i. x. to read*  
 Lente, ius; i. x. i. x. *Adv: 3. i. x. slowly*  
 Leo, are, evi, etum. *Act: 3. i. x. to anoint*  
 Lethum, i. *N. Pl. caret: 3. i. x. Death*  
 Lex, egis. *F. 3. A. i. x. a Law*  
 Libenter, ius; i. x. i. x. *Adv: 3. i. x. willingly*  
 Liber, bri. *M. 3. i. x. a Book*  
 Liber, era, erum. *Adj: 3. i. x. free*  
 Liberalis, is, e. *Adj: 3. ior, i. x. i. x. liberal*  
 Liberalitas, atis. *F. 3. i. x. Liberality*  
 Liberi, orum. *M. Sing. caret: 3. i. x. Children*  
 Libero, are, aui, atum. *Act: 3. i. x. to deliver*  
 Licet, cuit, citum est. *Imp: 3. i. x. it is permitted*  
 Linaus, i. *M. Pl. caret: 3. i. x. Mud*  
 Lingo,



Lingo, re, nxi, netum. Act: to lick  
Lino, re, ini, vi & i vi, itum. Act: to bind  
Liquo, re, liqui, alitum. Act: to liquidate  
Liquesco, ieri, etusum. Act: to melt  
Liquor, qui. Part: Dep: to melt  
Littera, arum. F. Sing. caret: M. to learn  
Locus, ci. M. Pl. i & a. Part: to place  
Londinum, i. N. Act: to load  
Longus, a, um. Adj: long  
Loquor, qui, cutum. Part: Dep: to speak  
Lubens, ntis. Part: to be willing  
Luceo, re, xi: Sup. caret. Neut: to shine  
Lucrum, i. N. to gain  
Ludo, re, si, sum. Act: to play  
Lues, is. F. Pl. caret. Part: to rot  
Lugdunum, i. N. Lyons: the Name of a Place  
Lugeo, re, xi, crum. Act: to grow dark  
Luna, e. F. the Moon  
Luo, re, ui, itum. Act: to pay: wash  
Lupus, i. M. a Wolf  
Lutum, i. N. D. to be muddy  
Maculo, are, avi, atum. Act: to stain  
Magnus, a, um. Adj: Major, Maximus, to be great  
Magistratus, us. M. a Magistrate  
Majores, orum. M. Sing. caret: Ancestors  
Mallo ille, ui. Verb irreg: to be more willing  
Malus, a, um. Adj: Pejor, pessimus; to be bad  
Mane. N. Indec: the Morning  
Mando, re, ndi, nsum. Act: to command  
Maneo, ere, nsi, nsum. Neut: to stay  
Manes, ium. M. Sing. caret: the Ghosts of the Dead  
Manubia, arum. F. Sing. caret: Pillage, Spoils  
Manus, us. F. a Hand  
Mauius, i. M. a Hub  
Marmor, oris. N. Marble  
Mater, tris. F. a Mother  
Matureo, are, avi, atum. Act: to make ripe  
Medeor, eri. Part. caret: Dep: to heal  
Medici

Medecina, æ. F.	Medicine
Mediocriter. Adv.	indifferently
Meditor, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Dep:	to meditate
Medius, a, um. Adj.	Middle
Melo, re, minxi, mictum. Neut:	to gills
Mel, illic. N. Pl. only a.	Honey
Melior, oris. Adj: comp. of bonus.	better
Memini, iſſe. Verb irreg: ;	to remember
Memor, oris. Adj:	mindful
Memoria, æ. F.	Memory
Mens, ntis. F.	the Mind
Mensa, æ. F.	a Table
Mercator, oris. M.	a Merchant
Mercatus, a, um. Partia.	bought, or sold
Merces, edis. F.	a Reward
Merenda, æ. F.	a little River
Mereor, ari, ui, & itus sum, vel fui. Dep:	to deserve
Metior, iri, ntus sum, vel fui. Dep:	to measure
Meto, re, ſui, ſum. Act:	to mow
Metuo, re, ui. Sup. caret: Aq;	to fear
Metuor, ui. Præ. caret:	to be feared
Metus, us. M.	Fear
Mico, are, ui. Sup. caret: Neut:	to shine
Meſurio, ire, iſſi & iſſi, i tum. ]	to have a Deſire to
Deſid:	make Water
Miliare, is. N.	a Mile
Milicia, æ. F.	War, or Warfare
Mina, arum. F. Sing. caret:	Threats
Mingo, re, nxi, etum. Neut:	to make Water
Minime. Adv:	No. In no wiſe
Minifterium, i. N.	Service
Ministro, re, avi, atum. Aq:	to ſerve
Minores, um. M. Sing. caret:	Poſterity
Mirabilis, is, e. Adj:	wonderful
Miror, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Dep:	to wonder
Miſceo, re, cui, ſum, & xtum. Aq:	to mix
Miſereor, re, ertus sum, vel fui. Dep:	to pity
Miſtus, a, um. Part:	mixed
Mittendus, a, um. Part:	to be ſent
Mitto,	Mitto,

Mitto, are, rsi, isum. Act; to send  
 Moenia, um. N. Sing. ] the Walls of a Town, or  
 caret; City  
 Mereo, ere. Neut; Pres. caret; to be sad  
 Molo, are, ui, itum. Act; to grudge  
 Monitor, oris. M. an Informer  
 Mons, tis. M. a Mountain  
 Moratus, a, um. Part; having tarried  
 Morbus, i. M. a Disease  
 Mordeo, ere, momordi, isum. Act; to bite  
 Morior, ri, mortuus sum, vel fui. Dep; to die  
 Mors, tis. F. Death  
 Mos, oris. M. a Manner  
 Moveo, ere, bvi, otum. Act; to move  
 Mulceo, ere, lsi, sum. Act; to alluage  
 Mulgeo, ere, si, sum & etum. Act; to milk  
 Mulier, eris. F. a Woman  
 Mulsum, i. N. Pl. only. a Metheglin  
 Multiplico, are, avi, atum. Act; to multiply  
 Multus, a, um. Adj; Plus, Plurimus; much  
 Mundus, a, um. Adj; clean  
 Mundus, i. M. the World  
 Munia, orum. N. Sing. caret; Offices to be done  
 Munificus, a, um. Adj; entior, entissimus; liberal  
 Munus, eris. N; a Gift  
 Muscus, i. M; Pl. caret; Mosa  
 Muto, are, avi, atum. Act; to change  
 Mutuus, a, um. Adj; mutual  
 N  
 Nactus, a, um. Part; having gotten  
 Nascor, sci, nactus sum, vel fui. Dep; to obtain  
 Narro, are, avi, atum. Act; to tell  
 Nascor, sci, natus sum vel fui. Dep; to be born  
 Nata, æ. F; a Daughter  
 Natales, ium. M; Sing. caret; Parentage  
 Natu. M; Abl; by Birth  
 Natura, æ. F; Nature  
 Nebulo, onis. M; a Knave  
 Necessarius, a, um. Adj; necessary  
 Neceffe,



Neceſſe.	Indec;	needful
Neceſſe, are, avi & ui, atum & ſum.	Act;	to kill
Necto, are, xui & xi, xum.	Act;	to knit
Nefaſ.	N; Indec;	Wickedneſs
Negligentia, æ.	F;	Negligence
Negligo, are, xi, ctum.	Act;	to neglect
Negotior, ari, atus ſum vel fui.	Dep;	to trade
Negotium, ii.	N;	Business
Nemo, inis.	C; Pl. caret;	No Body
Neo, are, avi, ſum.	Act;	to ſpin
Nequam.	Indec;	a Knave
Nefcio, are, rei, itum.	Act;	to be ignorant
Nexo, are, ui, xum.	Freq;	to knit
Nideo, are.	Neut; Præ. caret;	to ſhine
Nigreo, are, ui.	Neut; Sup. caret;	to grow black
Nihil.	N; Indec;	Nothing
Nihilominus.	Adv;	nevertheleſs
Nihilum, i.	N; Pl. caret;	Nothing
Ningo, are, nxi.	Sup. caret; Neut;	to ſnow
Nitor, i, ſus, & xus ſum vel fui.	Dep;	to endeavour
Nitrum, i.	N; Pl. caret;	Nitre
Nobilis, is, e.	Adj;	noble
Noceo, are, cui, citum.	Act;	to hurt
Noctu, m.	Abl;	by Night
Nomen, inis.	N;	a Name
Nonæ, arum.	F; Sing. caret;	the Nones of a Month
Nondum.	Adv;	not yet
Norma, æ.	F;	a Rule
Noſco, are, ovi, otum.	Act;	to know
Nota, æ.	F;	a Note
Novus, a, um.	Adj;	new
Noviſſimus, a, um.	Adj;	the laſt
Nubo, are, pli, ptum.	Act;	to marry
Nugæ, arum.	F; Sing. caret;	Toys, Trifles
Nummulus, i.	M;	a ſmall Piece of Silver
Nuncius, ii.	M.	a Meſſenger
Nupër.	Adv;	lateſt
Nuptiæ, arum.	F; Sing. caret;	a Wedding
Nuſquam.	Adv;	no where
Nympha, æ.	F;	a Nymph
		Obdo,

Obdo, ire, di, sum. A& ; to bar, or bolt  
Obedi, ire, vi, itum. Nout; to obey  
Oblatu, a, um. Part; offered  
Oblivio, onis. F; Forgetfulness  
Obliviosus, a, um. Adj; forgetful  
Obliviscor, sci, oblitus sum, vel fui. Dep; to forget  
Obsecro, are, avi, atum. A& ; to entreat  
Obsto, are, stiti, stum & stum. N; to withstand  
Obtineo, ere, ui, ntum: to obtain  
Obvindo, re, udi, usum. A& ; to make blunt  
Occasio, onis. F. Occasion, Opportunity  
Occido, re, idi, isum. A& ; to kill  
Occuldo, re, uli, usum. A& ; to shut up  
Occulto, re, ulai, ultum. A& ; to hide  
Occupatus, a, um. Part: occupied, busy  
Ocrea, e, F. a Boot  
Octavus, a, um. Adj: the eighth  
October, ris, m. The Month October  
Odium, n. N; hatred  
Offendo, re, di, sum. A& ; to offend  
Officina, e. F; a Shop  
Officium, ii. N; Office, Duty  
Oleo, ere, ui & evi, itum & atum. N; to yield a Smell  
Oleum, ei. N; Oil, Olive  
Olfacio, re, ecti, actum. A& ; to smell  
Omitto, re, isi, isum. A& ; to omit  
Omnino. Adv; altogether  
Omnis, is, e. Adj; all  
Onero, are, avi, atum. A& ; to burden  
Opera, e. F; Endeavour  
Operio, ire, ui, rtum. A& ; to cover  
Opino, ari, atus sum, vel fui. Dep; to think  
Opis, em, e. F; Help  
Oportet, ebat, uit, ere. Verb imp; it ought  
Oppango, ere, egi, actum. A& ; to join to  
Oppidum, i. N; a Town  
Oppono, re, fui, itum. A& ; to oppose  
Opportunitas, atis. F; Opportunity  
Oppressus,

Oppressus, a, um.	Part;	oppressed
Opsonium, ii: N.	All Victuals except Bread	
Optabilis, is, e.	Adj.	desirable
Optimus, a, um.	Adj.	the best
Opto, are, avi, atum.	Act;	to wish
Opus, eris, n.		Business
Opus, Sub. & Adj;		Need
Orbus, a, um.	Adj.	defunct
Ordo, inis; m.		Order
Orestes, æ, m.	Orestes, a Man's Name	
Orior, iri, ortus & orsus sum, vel fui.	Dep.	to rise
Oro, are, avi, atum.	Act.	to beg, to beseech
Ortus, a, um.	Part.	risen
Osento, are, avi, atum.	Freq.	to shew often
Otor, ari, atus sum, vel fui.	Dep.	to be idle, to rest
Otium, ii, n.		Leisure
P		
Padagogus, i; m.		a Tutor
Paciscor, sci, pactus, sum, vel fui.	Dep.	to bargain
Palleo, ere, ui, itum;	Neut.	to look pale
Pando, ere, di, assum & nsum;	Act.	to open
Pango, ere, nxi, pactum;	Act.	to drive in
Papaver, eris; n.		a Poppy
Par, Gen. is; Adj.		equal
Paratus, a, um;	Part.	prepared
Parco, ere, peperci, & parsi, sum & citum;	Act.	to spare
Pareo, ere, ui, itum;	Neut.	to obey
Pario, ere, peperii, ium, & rtum;	Act.	to bring forth
Part, is; F.		Part
Partio, ere, avi, itum;	Act.	to divide
Parturio, ire, ivi. itum;	Neut.	to be in labour
Panum, Adv.		a little
Pasco, ere, avi, assum;	Act.	to feed
Pateo, ere, ui, Sup; caret;	Neut.	to be open
Pater, ris, m.		a Father
Patior, ti, ssus sum, vel fui.	Dep.	to suffer
Patria, æ, F.		One's native Country
Paucus, a, um.	Adj. ior, issimus.	few
Y		
		Pauliper,



Paulisper.	Adv.	a little while
Paupertas, atis; F.		Povert
Paveo, are, avi.	Sup. caret; Neut.	to fe
Pax, acis; F.		Peac
Peccator, oris; m.		a Sinne
Peccatum, i. N.		Si
Pecco, are, avi, atum.	Aët.	to f
Pectus, are, xi, & xui, xum; Aët.		to com
Pecunia, æ, F.		Mone
Pedo, are, pepedi, itum; Neut.		to fa
Pejor, Gen. oris; Adj.		wor
Pelagus, i. m. & n.		the Se
Pello, are, pepuli, pulsum; Aët.		to drive awa
Penates, ium. m. Sing. caret;		Household Goo
Pendeo, are, pependi, pensum; Neut.		to han
Pendo, are, pependi, pensum; Aët.		to weig
Pensum, i. n.		a Ta
Penu.	Indec.	Provisio
Perago, are; igi, ætum.	Aët.	to perfor
Perdo, are, didi, itum.	Aët.	to lo
Peregrè, Adv.		abroa
Perfidus, a, um; Adj.		treacherou
Pergo, are, xi, ætum; Neut.		to go
Periculum, i. n.		Danger, a Tri
Perimo, are, emi, emptum; Aët.		to ki
Permissu, m. abl.		Permissio
Permitto, are, iſi, ſum; Aët.		to perm
Perneceſſarius, a, um. Adj.		very neceſſar
Pernicioſus, a, um; Adj.		pernicio
Perofus, a, um; Part.		hating perfect
Perpetior, ti, peſſus ſum, vel fui.		to ſuffer thorough
Perſto, are, iti, itum; Neut.		to perſi
Pertinio, are, ui, entum; Neut.		to belon
Pertingo. are, igi, ætum; Neut.		to reach
Pertundo, are, udi, uſum; Aët.		to kno
Per. rdis; m,		a Fo
Pestilentia, æ, f.		Pestilent
Pellundo, are, dedi, datum; Aët.		to caſt under Fo
Peto, are, ii, vel ivi itum, Aët.		to a
		Phaler

Phalera, arum, f.	the Trappings of an Horse
Sing. caret.	
Philidelpia, æ, i.	the City so called, brotherly Love
Piger, ra, rum; Adj.	lazy, slow
Pignus, oris; n.	a Pledge
Pingo, ere, nxi, tum; Aët.	to paint
Pingo, ere, ui & si, nsum, tum, & nsum; Aët.	to bake
Pinus, us & i. m & f.	a Pine Tree
Pituita, æ, f.	Phlem
Pix, icia; f.	a Pitch
Placeo, ere, cui, citum; Aët.	to please
Plaga, arum; f. Sing. caret	Nets
Plaudo, ere, si, sum; Aët.	to applaud by clapping Hands
Plebs, bis; f.	common People
Plecto, ere, xi, & xui, xum; Aët.	to plait
Plico, are, avi, & ui, atum & icium; Aët.	to fold
Pluo, ere, i & vi, itum; Neut.	to rain
Plus, Gen. ris; Adj.	more
Pœna, æ, f.	Punishment
Polleo, ere. Præ; caret.	to be able
Pomum, i. n.	an Apple
Pono, ero, fui, situm. Aët.	to put
Pontus, i; m.	the Sea
Populus, i; m.	the People
Porcus, i; m.	a Hog
Posco, ere, poposci, itum; Aët.	to ask, or demand
Potsum, se, tui; Sup; caret; Verb irreg.	to be able
Potestas, atis; f.	Power
Potior, iri, itus sum; Dep.	to enjoy
Potissimum; Adv.	especially
Poto, are, avi, & tus sum atum, & tum; Aët.	to drink
præceptor, oris, m.	a Master
præcipuus, a, um; Adj.	especial, chief
Præcordia, orum, n. Sing; caret.	the Breast
Præcurro, ere, ri, rsum; Aët.	to run before
Prædico, ere, xi, tum; Aët.	to foretell
Præditus, a, um; Part.	endued
Prælectio, onis; f.	a Lesson
	Premineo





Promptu. Abl.  
 Promptus, a, um; Adj.  
 Pronuncia, are, avi, atum; Act.  
 Propensus, a, um. P. & A.  
 Propositum, i. n.  
 Proprius, a, um. Adj.  
 Prosperus, a, um. Adj.  
 Proverbium, ii. n.  
 Provideo, ere. idi, ifum. Act.:  
 Prudens, ntis. Adj.:  
 Prudenter. Adv.  
 Prudentia, e. f.  
 Psallo, ere. li. Sup. caret.  
 Puer, iom.  
 Pueraſco, re. P. a: caret. Neut.:  
 Pulcher, a, um. Adj.:  
 Pungo, re. ixi & pupugi, netum. Act.  
 Puniendus, a, um. Part.:  
 Punio, ire. ivi, itum. Act.:  
 Purgo, are, avi, atum, Act.:  
 Pus, uris, n.  
 Pusillus, a, um. Adj.:  
 Puto. are, avi, atum, Act.:  
 Pylades, is. m.  
 Quadratus, a, um. Part. & Adj.:  
 Quæro, re. fivi, situm. Act.:  
 Quæſo, umus. Defec.:  
 Qualis, is. e. Adj.:  
 Quantum, a, um. Adj.:  
 Quatio, re. ſſi, ſſum. Act.:  
 Quatuor. Adj. indec.:  
 Quæo, ire. ivi, itum. Neut.:  
 Quercus, Gen. i & us. f.  
 Querela, æ. f.  
 Queror, ri, ſtus ſum. Dep.:  
 Quies, etis. f.  
 Quinſco, re, exi. Sup. caret. Neut.:  
 Quinquaginta. Adj. indec.:

in Readineſſe  
 ready  
 to pronounce  
 inclined, ready  
 a Purpoſe  
 proper  
 prosperous  
 a Proverb  
 to provide  
 prudent  
 prudently  
 Prudence  
 to ſing  
 a boy  
 to grow childliſh  
 fair  
 to pick  
 to be puniſhed  
 to puniſh  
 to purge  
 putrid Matter  
 little  
 to think  
 a Man's Name  
 ſquare, ſquared  
 to think  
 I pray  
 ſuch as  
 how great  
 to ſhake  
 four  
 to be able  
 an oak  
 a Complaint  
 to complain  
 Reſt  
 to need  
 Fifty

Quinque. Adj. indec:	IdA	five
Quisquilæ, rum. f. Sing. caret:	IdA	Sweepings
Quot. Adj. indec:	IdA	how many
Quoridie, Adv.	IdA	daily
Quoties. Adv.	IdA	how often
Quotusquisque, aquæque, ] unquodque. Adj. ]	IdA	one of how many
R		
Rado, ere, si, sum. Aët:	IdA	to shave
Rastrum, i n. Plu: i, & a.	IdA	a Rake
Ratio, onis. f.	IdA	Reason
Raucio, re, si, sum. Neut.	IdA	to be hoarse
Recido, re, idi, sum; Neut.	IdA	to fall backward
Recido, ere, idi, sum; Aët.	IdA	to cut off
Recito, are, avi, atum; Aët.	IdA	to recite
Recordor, ari, atus, sum; Dep.	IdA	to remember
Recta, Adv.	IdA	straight forward
Rectè, Adv. ius, issime.	IdA	rightly
Rectus, a, um. Part.	IdA	ruled
Reddendus, a, um; Part.	IdA	to be rendered
Reddo, ere, idi, itum; Aët.	IdA	to render
Redeo, re, ivi, itum; Aët.	IdA	to return
Reditus, us; m.	IdA	a Return
Redoleo, re, ui itum; Neut.	IdA	to smell strong
Reduco, ere, xi, atum. Aët.	IdA	to lend, to bring back
Refello, re, ili, ulsum; Aët.	IdA	to confute
Refero, re, tuli, latum; Aët.	IdA	to bring again
Refertus, a, um; Part.	IdA	filled
Refringo, ere, rgi atum; Aët.	IdA	to break open
Regina, æ, f.	IdA	a Queen
Regno, vre, avi, atum; Neut.	IdA	to reign
Rego, ere, xi, atum; Aët.	IdA	to rule
Rejicio, ere, evi, atum; Aët.	IdA	to reject
Relego, are, avi, atum; Aët.	IdA	to send away
Relego, re, gi, atum; Aët.	IdA	to read again
Religo, are, avi, atum; Aët.	IdA	to bind hard
Relinquo, ere, iqui, atum; Aët.	IdA	to leave
Reliquæ, arum. f. Sing. caret.	IdA	Relicks
	IdA	Reminiscor

- Reminiscor, sci. Præt. caret; Dep. to remember  
 Remissus, a, um; Part. loosened  
 Renuncio, are, avi, atum; Act. to renounce  
 Renuo, are, ui, utum; Neut. to refuse  
 Reor, ari, ratus sum; Dep. to suppose  
 Repango, are, xgi, actum; Act. to fasten again  
 Reperio, ire, eri, ertum; Act. to find  
 Repertus, a, um; Part. found  
 Repeto, are, ii & iui, itum; Act. to repeat  
 Replico, are, ui & avi, utum } to unfold, reply  
 & atum; Act.  
 Reprehendo, are, di, sum; Act. to pluck back, reprove  
 Reprimo, are, si, sum; Act. to restrain  
 Repulsa, æ, f. a Deniel  
 Repungo, are, pupugi, & nxi, } to prick again  
 actum; Act.  
 Reputo, are, avi, atum; Act. to repeat  
 Requiro, are, sivi, situm; Act. to require  
 Res, ei, f. a Thing  
 Rescribo, are, psi, ptum; Act. to write again  
 Respicio, are, xi, ectum; Act. to look back  
 Respondeo, are, di, sum; Neut. to Answer  
 Respublica, Reipublicæ, f. a Republick  
 Respuo, are, ui, utum; Act. to put away, reject  
 Resto, are, iti, atum; Neut. to remain  
 Resulto, are, avi, atum. Freq. to rebound  
 Reticeo, are, cui, icitum, Neut. to be silent  
 Retineo, are, ui, entum; Act. to retain  
 Reus, a, um. Adj. guilty  
 Rideo, are, isi, isum; Act. to laugh  
 Ringo, are, nxi, ctum. to grin  
 Riparius, a, } dwelling by the Banks of Rivers.  
 um; Adj.  
 Rodo, are, si, sum, Act. to gnaw  
 Roma, æ, f. Rome  
 Rostra, orum, n. Sing. caret. a Pulpit  
 Rotundus, a, um; Adj. round  
 Rudo, are, di. Sup. caret. n. to bray as an Ass  
 Rumpo, are, upi, uptum; Act. to break  
 Ruo,



scrib

Scrin

Script

SECRET

Seco

SECO  
SACU

Secu  
Feds

Sede

Sem p

**Sene**

## Sene

## Senior

## Senio

Sen 1

Senior

Senel

Sepe  
Sapio

**Sepio**

Sequ

## Seren

Ser o,

Sero,

Service

Servu

Sever

Sever  
Sido

Simia

Simila  
Simila

Simi l.  
Singul.

dingu

dino,

bifer,

Gift,

bitis,

Bobol

ocius

...ocrat

hol is

01, 19  
01/01

oleo,  
olium

Volume

olom

10

Scribo, re, pſi, ptum. Aſt. to write  
 Scriptor, oris. m. a writer  
 Scripturio, re, iui. Sup: caret. Deſid. to deſire to write  
 Secedo, re, ſſi, ſſum. Neut: to ſeparate from  
 Seco, re, ui, etum. Aſt: to cut  
 Secundus, a, um. Adj: Second  
 Sedeo, re, edi, ſſum. Neut: to ſit  
 Semper: Adv. always  
 Senectus, utis. f: Plu. caret old age  
 Senefco, re, ui. Sup: caret; Neut. to grow old  
 Senex, ſenis. c. an old Man, or Woman  
 Senio, onis. m. A Six on the Dice  
 Senium, ii: n. old Age  
 Sententia, æ. f. a Sentence  
 Sepelio, re, iui, ultum. Aſt. to bury  
 Sepio, re, iui, & pſi, tum & ptum; Aſt. to hedge in  
 Sequor, qui. quutus, ſum; Dep. to follow  
 Serenitas, atis, f. Serenity  
 Sero, re, vi, atum; Aſt. to ſow  
 Sero, re, ui, tum; Aſt, to ſet in Order  
 Servio, re. Præ. caret; Neut. to ſerve  
 Servus, a, um; a Servant-Man  
 Severus, a, um; Adj. ſevere  
 Sido, re, ſedi, ſeſſum; Neut. to ſettle  
 Simia, æ. f. an Ape  
 Similis, is, e; Adj. ior, illimus. like  
 Singultio, re, iui, dltum: Neut. to ſob  
 Sino, re, iui, itum; Aſt. to ſuffer  
 Siſer, eris, n. a Pariſnip  
 Siſto, re, ſſiti, ſſatum: Aſt. to ſtop  
 Sitis, is, f. Plu. caret. Thuriſt  
 Soboles, is, Offspring  
 Socius, a, um; Adj. ſocial  
 Socrates, is, m. Socrates a famous Philoſopher  
 Sol, is, m. the Sun  
 Soleo, re, itus ſum; N. P. to be wont  
 Solium, ii, n. a Thron-  
 Solomon, onis, m. Solomon, a Man's Name  
 Z Solvo,

Solvo, re, vi, lutum; Aët.	to loose, or free
Somnus, i, m.	Sleep
Sonitus, us, m.	a Sound
Sono, re, ui, itum; Aët.	to sound
Sorbeo, ere, ui & psi, ptum; Aët.	to sip
Spargo, re, si, sum; Aët.	to scatter
Specio, ere, xi, ctum; Aët.	to behold
Speciendus, a, um; Part.	to be beheld
Speciatus, a, um; Part.	beheld, seen
Specto, are, avi, atum; Freq.	to behold
Sperans, ntis, m. Part.	hoping
Sperno, re, sprevi, spretum; Aët.	to despise
Spero, are, avi, atum; Aët.	to hope
Sper, ei, f.	Hope
Spondeo, ere, spondi, ssum; Aët.	to promise
Sponsalia, orum, n. Sing. caret.	an Espousal
Stans, re, ui, utum; Aët.	to appoint
Stans, re, stravi, stratum; Aët.	to lay on the Ground
Stans, re, ui, itum; Neut.	to spread; to strow
Stans, stare stels, statum. Neut.	to make a Noise
Stans, re, ui, itum. Neut.	to stand
Strideo, ere, di; Sup. caret.] Neut.	to make a Noise
Strido, re, di; Sup. caret.] Neut.	to crash, or break; to hiss
Stringo, ere, nxi, ctum; Aët.	to strain
Struo, re, xi, ctum; Aët.	to build
Studiosus, a, um; Adj.	studious
Studium ii, n.	Study
Stultitia, æ, f.	Folly
Stultus, ti, m.	a Fool
Suadeo, ere, si, sum; Aët.	to persuade
Suavis, is, e; Adj. ior, issimus.	sweet
Snaviter, Adv.	sweetly
Sublimis, is, e; Adj.	sublime
Subjicio, ere, cci, ctum; Aët.	to subject
Substo, are, iti, itum; Neut.	to abide
Suburbanus, a, um; Adj.	nigh a City
Succellus, us; m.	Success
Sudor, oris; m.	Sweat



Suesco, are, ixi, itum; Incep.	to accustom
Suffero, erre, sustuli, sublatum; Act. irreg.	to endure
Sufficio, ere, eci, ectum; Neut.	to suffice
Sugo, ere, xi, ctum; Act.	to suck
Summus, a, um; Adj.	the highest
Sumo, ere, psi, ptum; Act.	to take
Supellex, ctilis, f, plu. ctilia; n.	Household stuff
Superbus, a, um; Adj.	proud
Superior, or, us. Gen. oris; Adj.	higher
Suppetia, acc. as, f. Sing. caret.	Aid
Suppetit, Imp.	it suffices
Supplicium, ii, n.	Punishment, Supplication
Surgo, ere, rexi, rectum; Neut.	to arise
Suspecto, are, avi, atum; Act.	to look often upward
Suspectus, a, um; Part.	suspected
Suspiciosus, a, um; Adj.	suspicious
T	
Tabes, is, f. Plu. caret.	a Consumption
Taceo, ere, ui, itum; Neut.	to be silent
Talio, onis, f.	like for like
Talis, is, e; Adj.	such as
Tango, ere, tetigi, tactum; Act.	to touch
Tanillus, a, um; Adj. dim.	so very little
Tantundem, idem, n.	so much
Tantus, a, um; Adj.	so great
Tardus, a, um; Adj.	slow
Tartarus, i, um; plu. a.	Hell
Tellus, uris, f. plu. caret.	the Earth
Temno, ere, mpsi, mptum; Act.	to despise
Templum, i, n.	a Temple
Tempus, oris, n.	Time
Tendo, ere, tedendi, sum & tum; Act.	to stretch
Tenebrae, arum, f. Sing. caret.	Darkness
Teneo, ere, ui, ntum. Act.	to hold
Tepeo, ere, ui. Sup. caret. Neut.	to be warm
Tepeisco, ere, ui, Sup. caret. Incep.	to grow warm
Tergeo, ere, si, sum; Act.	to wipe
Terentius, ii, m.	Terence, a Man's Name
	Tero,

Tero, <i>re</i> , trivi, tritum; Act.	to wear; to rub
Teruncius, ii. m.	a Farthing
Testamentum, i. n.	a Testament
Testimonium, ii. n.	Testimony
Teucrī, orum, m; Sing. caret.	the Trojans
Texo, <i>re</i> , ui & xi, tum; Act.	to weave
Thus, uris, n. plu. only a.	Frankincense
Timendus, a, um; Part.	to be feared
Timeo, <i>re</i> , ui, Sup. caret; Act.	to fear
Timeor, <i>ui</i> Præt; caret.	to be feared
Timidus, a, um; Adj. ior, issimus.	fearful
Timor, oris, m.	fear
Tiubo, <i>re</i> , avi, atum; Neut.	to stagger
Toga, <i>a</i> , f.	a Gown
Tollo, <i>re</i> , sustuli, sublatum; Act.	to take away
Tondeo, <i>re</i> , totondi, sum; Act.	to clip
Tono, <i>re</i> , ui, itum; Neut.	to thunder
Torqueo, <i>re</i> , si, sum & tum; Act.	to twist
Torreo, <i>re</i> , ui, tostum; Act.	to roast
Trado, <i>re</i> , idi, itum; Act.	to deliver
Traho, <i>re</i> , xi, ctum; Act.	to draw
Tredecem, Indic.	thirteen
Tremo, <i>re</i> , ui; Neut.	to tremble
Tres, <i>es</i> , ia, Adj.	three
Tribuo, <i>re</i> , ui, utum; Act.	to give
Tricæ, arum f; Sing. caret.	Trifles
Triticum ci, n.	Wheat
Troia, <i>a</i> , f.	the City Troy
Trudo, <i>re</i> , si, sum; Act.	to thrust
Tueor, <i>eri</i> , itus, } Dep.	to see; to defend
Tuor, ui, utus, }	
Tundo, <i>re</i> , tutudi, nsom & usum; Act.	to knock
Turgeo, <i>re</i> , si. Sup. caret. Neut.	to swell
Turma, <i>a</i> , f.	a Troop
Turris, <i>is</i> , f.	a Tower
Tussis, <i>is</i> , f.	a Cough
Tutus, a, um. Adj. ior, issimus.	safe
	U & V

## U &amp; V

Vacuum, a, um; Adj.	empty; void
Vado, re, fi, sum; Neut.	to go
Valeo, re, ui, itum; Neut.	to be in Health
Valétudo, inis, f; plu. caret.	Health
Valvæ, arum, f; Sing. caret.	folding Doors
Vapulo, are, avi, atum, n. p.	to be beaten
Vas, fis, n.	a Vessel
Uber, eris, n.	an Udder
Veho, re, xi, ctum; Act.	to carry
Vello, re, li & ulsi, ulsum; Act.	to pluck
Venalis, is, e; Adj.	venal; set to Sale
Vendo, re, idi, itum; Act.	to sell
Veneo, ire, ii, um, n. p.	to be sold
Venia, æ, f.	Pardon
Venio, ire, ni, ntum; Neut.	to come
Venturus, a, um; Part.	about to come
Ventus, i, m.	the Wind
Ver, is, n. Plu. caret.	Spring
Verber, eris, n.	a Stripe
Verbum, i; n.	a Word
Verecundia, æ, f.	Bashfulness
Vereor, ri, itus sum. Dep.	to reverence
Vergo, re, fi sum. Neut.	to bend
Verro, re, ri, rsum. Act:	to brush
Verficulus, i, m.	a little Verse
Verto, re, fi, sum. Act:	to turn
Verus, a, um. Adj. ior, issimus:	true
Vescor, sei: Præ: caret: Dep:	to eat
Vesper, ri, m:	the Evening
Veto, are, ui, itum: Act:	to forbid
Vetus, eris. Adj.	old
Via, æ, f.	a Way
Vicinia, æ, f:	a Neighbourhood
Vicis, em, e. Plu } Vices, ibus only }	the Stead, or Place of another by turns
Vicissim. Adv.	
	Vicito,



Vicito, are, atum. Neut.	to live by eating
Victor, oris: m	a Conqueror
Victoria, æ: f.	Victory
Video, ere, di, sum. Act.	to see
Videor, eri, fus: sum. Pass.	to seem
Viduus, a, um Adj.	bereaved
Vico, ere, vi, atum. Act.	to tie with Twigs
Vigile, ate, avi atum. Act. Neut.	to watch
Viginti. Indec.	Twenty
Vigor, oris. m	Vigor
Villa, æ: f.	a farm; a Village
Villicus, i. m.	a farmer
Vincio, ire, xxi, ctum. Act.	to bind
Vinco, ere, ici, ctum, Act.	to overcome
Vindemia, æ: f.	a Vintage
Vindemio, are, avi, atum. Act.	to gather Grapes
Vindicæ, arum, f.	} the clearing of a thing from
Sing. caret:	Controversy
Vir, i. m.	a Man
Virga, æ: f.	a Rod
Virgilius, ii. m.	Virgil
Virgo, inis. f.	a Virgin
Virus, i. n:	Poison
Vis, im, i. f. Plur: res, ium, &c.	Strength; Power
Viscum, i: n	} Birdlime
Viseus, i. m.	
Viscus, ers: n	an Entral; a Bowel
Viso, ere, fi, sum: Act	to Visit
Vitiatus, a, um. Part:	spoiled
Vitium, ii. n.	Vice
Vitrum, i. n. Plnr. caret:	Glass
Vivo, ere, xi, ctum. Neut:	to live
Ulciscor, sci, ultus sum: Dep.	to avenge
Umbrella, æ: f:	a little Shade
Umbra, æ: f:	a Shade
Umbrifer, era, erum, Adj:	casting a Shade
Umbrosus, a, um: Adj:	shady
Unus, a, um: Adj: Gen: ius:	one
	Voco,

Voco, are, avi, atum: Aft.	to call
Volvo, re, vi, itum: Aft.	to roll
Voluntas, atis, f.	the Will
Voluptas, atis, f.	Pleasure
Vomo, ere, ui, itum: Aft.	to vomit
Vox, cis, f.	a Voice
Urbs, is, f.	a City
Urgeo, ere, fi, sum: Aft.	to urge
Uro, re, uxi, uxi, um: Aft.	to burn
Ufurpo, are, avi, atum: Aft.	to use often, to usurp
Ufus, us, m.	Use
Ufus, Indec.	Need
Utilis, is, e. Adj. ilior, iliffimus:	useful; profitable
Utilitas, atis, f.	Utility, Profit
Utor, ti, sus, sum; Dep.	to use
Vulgaris, is, e. Adj.	vulgar, common
Vulgo, are, avi, atum; Aft.	to publish
Vulgus, i. m. or n.	the common People.

## F I N I S.

The following B O O K S and other Articles may be had at NATHANIEL PATTENS Shop, a little North of the Court-House, Hartford:

**B**IBLES, Testaments, Dilworths and Fennings Spelling Books, Psalters, Primers, Watts's Psalms and Hymns bound in one Vol. or sepeate, Watts's Lyric Poems, Lowths English Grammer, Pocket Dictionaries, Chestersfields Letters, Pupil of Pleasure, Young Man's best Companion, Popes Essay on Man, History of the Marters, Mrs. Rowe's Letters, History of the War, Diseases of the Army, Latin Accidences, ditto Corderies, ditto Erasms, ditto Words and Phrases, ditto Testaments, Clark's Justin ditto.

English and Home-made Writing Paper, Press Paper, Cartridge

Cartridge ditto; Account Books, Receipt ditto, Record ditto, Pocket ditto; Slate Pencils, Black-Lead ditto; Ink Powder, Ink Holders; Sealing Wax, Wafers, Slates; Coppy Books, Song Books, and a Variety of of small entertaining Books for Children, &c. &c. &c.

Tea, Coffee, Chocolate, Sugar; Indigo, Pepper, Ginger, Allspice, Brimstone, Crown Soap, Chalk, Shot, Nails, Copperas, Logwood, Allum, Jack and Pen-Knives, Scissors, darning Needles, sewing Ditto, Pins, Gimblets, knitting Needles, Thimbles, Fish-Hooks, Awl Blades, Shoe Tacks, Sleeve Buttons, Shoe and Knee Buckels, Neck Ditto, Broaches, Hair Pins, Combs, Black and white Gauzes, Silk Handkerchiefs, Cap Wire, Silk Gartering, Tapes, Threads, and a great Number of other Articles, too numerous to mention.

At the above Shop old Books are rebound, gilded and lettered in the neatest Manner, and CAN or any of the above Articles given for Cotton or Linen Rags.

F I N I S

31 DE 63